



सत्यमेव जयते

क्षेत्र कर्मचारियों के लिए अनुदेश Instructions to Field Staff

खण्ड / Volume – I

अभिकल्प, संकल्पनाएँ, परिभाषाएँ एवं प्रक्रियाएँ
Design, Concepts, Definitions and Procedures

समाजार्थिक सर्वेक्षण
SOCIO-ECONOMIC SURVEY

एन एस एस 78वाँ दौर
NSS 78th Round
जनवरी - दिसम्बर 2020
January - December 2020



Data for Development

भारत सरकार
Government of India
सांख्यिकी और कार्यक्रम कार्यान्वयन मंत्रालय
Ministry of Statistics & Programme Implementation
राष्ट्रीय सांख्यिकीय कार्यालय
National Statistical Office

नवम्बर 2019
November 2019



क्षेत्र कर्मचारियों के लिए अनुदेश
Instructions to Field Staff

खंड / Volume - I

अभिकल्प, संकल्पनाएँ, परिभाषाएँ एवं प्रक्रियाएँ
Design, Concepts, Definitions and Procedures

समाजार्थिक सर्वेक्षण
SOCIO-ECONOMIC SURVEY

एनएसएस 78वाँ दौर

NSS 78th Round

(जनवरी – दिसम्बर, 2020)

(JANUARY – DECEMBER, 2020)



राष्ट्रीय सांख्यिकीय कार्यालय
National Statistical Office
सांख्यिकी और कार्यक्रम कार्यान्वयन मंत्रालय
Ministry of Statistics and Programme Implementation
भारत सरकार
Government of India

नवम्बर, 2019

November, 2019

CONTENTS

	Title	Page No.
Chapter One	: Introduction: Coverage, Concepts, Design and Definition	A1 – A32
Chapter Two	: Schedule 0.0: List of Households	B1– B35
Chapter Three	: Schedule 21.1: Domestic Tourism Expenditure	C1 – C48
Chapter Four	: Schedule 5.1: Multiple Indicator Survey	D1 – D88
	APPENDIX-I	E1 – E14

Chapter One

Introduction: Coverage, Concepts, Design and Definitions

1.0 Introduction

1.0.1 The National Sample Surveys (NSS) are being conducted by the Government of India since 1950 to collect socio-economic data employing scientific sampling methods. Seventy-eighth rounds of NSS will commence from 1st January 2020.

1.0.2 NSS 78th round is earmarked for collection of data on ‘Domestic Tourism Expenditure’ and ‘Multiple Indicators’. The last survey on Domestic Tourism was conducted in 72nd round of NSS (July 2014 - June 2015). Survey on Multiple Indicators is being conducted for the first time in NSS during this round.

1.1 Objectives of the survey

1.1.1 **Survey on ‘Domestic Tourism Expenditure’ (Schedule 21.1):** In a large and culturally diverse country like India, the importance of tourism in the national economy is manifold: in generating employment in various industries like hospitality, handicrafts, transport services etc., in development of backward areas and thereby restricting migration from rural to urban areas, in the preservation and enhancement of natural resources and historical heritage etc. Tourism, by itself, does not constitute any specific industry in the economy in the way industry is defined in the *System of National Accounts*. Rather, it is a, amalgam of several traditional sectors like transport, accommodation, food and beverage services, recreation and entertainment, etc. Expenditure on domestic tourism (overnight) is an important component for preparation of Tourism Satellite Account (TSA), which is meant to measure these goods and services according to international standards of concepts, classifications and definitions.

1.1.2 Domestic Tourism Expenditure Survey of NSS 78th round is designed to collect detailed information on expenditure on domestic tourism along with some information on household characteristics, visitor characteristics and trip characteristics in relation to domestic overnight trips, required for preparation of third Tourism Satellite Account (TSA) which will be done by the Ministry of Tourism (MoT). In addition, some important information on trips and expenditure in connection with domestic same-day trips and information on services of tour operators, tour guides, etc., availed by the domestic tourists will also be collected in this survey.

Besides providing input for preparation of TSA, The survey will cover a wide range of information on the following aspects:

- Month of starting the trip
 - Purpose of the trip
 - Main destination of the trip
 - Means of transport used during trip: Two means of transport considering the maximum distance covered
-

- Type of accommodation used for stay: Two types of accommodation used considering the highest number of nights spent
- Duration of stay
- Use of various tourism specific products and services for the trip, such as services of tour operators, tour guides and the quality of tourism products/ services (viz. accommodation, food, transport and other services) availed through them.

These constitute a valuable information base for further policy research and for formulation of sector specific policies and programmes for creation and development of infrastructure, tour packages, etc.

1.1.3 Objective of the Survey on Multiple Indicators (Schedule 5.1): The objective of Multiple Indicator Survey (MIS) is to collect information for developing some important indicators of Sustainable Development Goals 2030. Information on (i) Migration and (ii) Construction of houses since 2014-15 will also be collected through MIS as per the request of M/o HUA. In addition to these, information on access to mass media, availability of birth registration certificate will be collected in MIS.

1.2 Outline of the Survey programme

1.2.1 Geographical coverage: The survey will cover the whole of the Indian Union except the villages in Andaman and Nicobar Islands which are difficult to access.

1.2.2 Survey Period: The survey will commence from 1st January, 2020. The survey period will be of one year duration.

1.2.3 Sub-rounds: The survey period of the round will be divided into four sub-rounds of three months' duration each as follows:

- sub-round 1 : January - March 2020
- sub-round 2 : April - June 2020
- sub-round 3 : July - September 2020
- sub-round 4 : October -December 2020

In each of these four sub-rounds equal number of sample First Stage Units (FSUs) will be allotted for survey with a view to ensure uniform spread of sample FSUs over the entire survey period. Attempt should be made to survey each of the FSUs during the sub-round to which it is allotted. *Because of the arduous field conditions, this restriction need not be strictly enforced in Andaman and Nicobar Islands, Lakshadweep, Leh and Kargil districts of Ladakh and rural areas of Arunachal Pradesh and Nagaland.*

1.2.4 Schedules of enquiry: During this round, the following schedules of enquiry will be canvassed:

- Schedule 0.0 : List of Households
- Schedule 21.1 : Domestic Tourism Expenditure
- Schedule 5.1 : Multiple Indicator Survey

1.2.5 Participation of States: All the States and Union Territories except Andaman & Nicobar Islands, Dadra & Nagar Haveli and Lakshadweep are participating in this round. Following is the matching pattern of the participating States/UTs in this round:

State/UT	Extent of matching
Nagaland (U)	: triple
Manipur, Telangana	: double
Maharashtra (U)	: one and half
Remaining States/ UTs	: equal

1.3 Contents of Volume I

1.3.1 The present volume contains four chapters. Chapter One, besides giving an overview of the whole survey operation, discusses the concepts and definitions of certain important technical terms to be used in the surveys. It also describes in details the sample design and the procedure for selection of households adopted in this round. Instructions for filling in different schedules are given in Chapters Two to Four.

1.3.2 Along with the instructions, a list of Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) is also appended at the end of each of the Chapters Two to Four.

1.4 Sample Design

1.4.1 Formation of sub-units (SUs):

1.4.1.1 **Rural areas:** A rural village will be notionally divided into a number of sub-units (SU) of more or less equal population during the preparation of frame. Census 2011 population of villages will be projected by applying suitable growth rates and the number of SUs to be formed in a village will be determined apriori.

1.4.1.2 The above procedure of SU formation will be implemented in the villages with population *more than or equal to 1000 as per Census 2011*. In the remaining villages, no SU will be formed.

1.4.1.3 The number of SUs to be formed in the villages (with Census 2011 population 1000 or more) of the frame will be decided before selection of the samples following the criteria given below:

projected population of the village	no. of SUs to be formed
less than 1200	1
1200 to 2399	2
2400 to 3599	3
3600 to 4799	4
4800 to 5999	5
.....and so on	....

1.4.1.4 Special case:

1.4.1.4.1 For rural areas of (i) Himachal Pradesh, (ii) Sikkim, (iii) Andaman & Nicobar Islands, (iv) Uttarakhand (except four districts Dehradun, Nainital, Hardwar and Udham Singh Nagar), (v) Punch, Rajouri, Udhampur, Reasi, Doda, Kishtwar, Ramban of Jammu and Kashmir (vi) Leh and Kargil districts of Ladakh region and (vii) Idukki district of Kerala, numbers of SUs to be formed in a village will be determined in such a way that each SU contains 600 or less projected population. Further, SUs will not be formed in the villages in the above mentioned districts/States with population less than 500 as per Census 2011. In the remaining villages the number of SUs to be formed for these States/districts will be as follows:

projected population of the village	no. of SUs to be formed
less than 600	1
600 to 1199	2
1200 to 1799	3
1800 to 2399	4
2400 to 2999	5
.....and so on	....

1.4.1.4.2 For rural parts of Kerala, similar procedure as mentioned in para 1.4.1.3 above will be adopted with the modification that the SUs will be formed within Panchayat Wards instead of villages.

1.4.1.5 **Urban areas:** SUs will be formed in urban sector also. The procedure will be similar to that adopted in rural areas except that SUs will be formed on the basis of households in the UFS frame instead of population, since UFS frame does not have population. Each UFS block with number of households more than or equal to 250 will be divided into a number of SUs. In the remaining UFS blocks, no SU will be formed.

1.4.1.6 The number of SUs to be formed in the UFS blocks of the frame will be decided before selection of the samples following the criteria given below:

number of households of the UFS block	no. of SUs to be formed
less than 250	1
250 to 499	2
500 to 749	3
750 to 999	4
1000 to 1249	5
.....and so on	....

1.4.2 **Outline of sample design:** A stratified multi-stage design will be adopted for the 78th round survey. *The first stage units (FSU) will be villages/UFS blocks/sub-units (SUs) as per the situation.* The ultimate stage units (USU) will be households in both the sectors.

1.4.3 Sampling Frame for First Stage Units (FSUs):

1.4.3.1 There will be no SU formation in uninhabited villages and villages (Panchayat wards for Kerala) with population less than 1000 as per Census 2011 (less than 500 as per Census 2011 for the areas mentioned in para 1.4.1.4.1) and entire village will be considered as one FSU. All such villages (Panchayat wards for Kerala) will be the First Stage Units (FSUs).

1.4.3.2 In the remaining villages, notional sub-units (SUs) following the procedure as described in para 1.4.1.1 will be formed. Such SUs will be considered as First Stage Units (FSUs).

1.4.3.3 For the UFS blocks with less than 250 households, the entire UFS block will be considered as one FSU. In the remaining UFS blocks, the SUs will be considered as First Stage Units (FSUs).

1.4.3.4 List of FSUs as described above will be the sampling frame for respective cases.

1.4.4 Stratification of FSUs:

(a) Each district will be a stratum. Within each district of a State/UT, generally speaking, two basic strata will be formed: (i) rural stratum comprising of all rural areas of the district and (ii) urban stratum comprising of all the urban areas of the district. However, within the urban areas of a district, if there are one or more towns with population one million or more as per Census 2011, each of them will form a separate basic stratum and the remaining urban areas of the district will be considered as another basic stratum.

(b) A special stratum, in the *rural areas* only, will be formed at *all-India level* before district level strata are formed in each State/UT. This stratum will comprise all the uninhabited villages as per Census 2011 belonging to all States/UTs.

1.4.5 Sub-stratification of FSUs:

1.4.5.1 **Rural sector:** Three groups of villages will be formed within each stratum, except special rural stratum at all-India level as mentioned in para 1.4.4(b):

Group 1: all villages (Panchayat wards for Kerala) with Census 2011 population less than 250

Group 2: all villages (Panchayat wards for Kerala) with Census 2011 population more than or equal to 250 but less than 500

Group 3: remaining villages

The sample size for a rural stratum will be allocated among 3 groups in proportion to population. Let r_1 , r_2 and r_3 be the allocations to Group 1, Group 2 and Group 3 respectively. The villages within each group will be first arranged in ascending order of number of population. For all the three groups within each strata, ' $r_1/4 > 1$ ', ' $r_2/4 > 1$ ' and ' $r_3/4 > 1$ ', will imply formation of 2 or more sub-strata in each group. Sub-strata will be demarcated in Group

1, Group 2 and Group 3 respectively in such a way that each sub-stratum will comprise a group of villages (all SUs of a village considered together) of the arranged frame and have more or less equal population.

If number of FSUs in a particular Group is very small, no sub-stratum may be formed in that Group.

1.4.5.2 Urban sector: Let 'u' be the sample size allocated for an urban stratum. For all strata, if 'u/4' >1, implying formation of 2 or more sub-strata, all the UFS blocks within the stratum will be first arranged in ascending order of total number of households in the UFS blocks as per urban frame. Then sub-strata will be demarcated in such a way that each sub-stratum will comprise a group of UFS blocks (all SUs of a block considered together) having more or less equal number of households.

1.4.6 Total sample size (FSUs): About 14500 FSUs will be surveyed for the central sample at all-India level. State wise allocation of sample FSUs is given in Table 1 of page A-31.

1.4.7 Allocation of total sample to State/UTs: The total number of sample FSUs will be allocated to the State/UTs in proportion to population as per Census 2011 subject to a minimum sample allocation of 16 FSUs to each State/UT.

1.4.8 Allocation of State/UT level sample to rural and urban sectors: State/UT level sample size will be allocated between two sectors in proportion to population as per Census 2011 with 1.5 weightage to urban sector. A minimum of 4 FSUs, each for rural and urban sector separately, will be allocated to each State/UT. For more urbanised big States like Maharashtra, Tamil Nadu etc., the urban allocation will be limited to rural sample size to avoid undue weightage to urban sector.

1.4.9 Allocation to strata: Within each sector of a State/ UT, the respective sample size will be allocated to the different strata in proportion to the population as per Census 2011. Stratum level allocation will be adjusted to multiples of 4 with a minimum sample size of 4.

For special stratum formed at all-India level, 16 FSUs will be allocated.

1.4.10 Allocation to sub-strata:

1.4.10.1 Generally, allocation will be 4 for each sub-stratum in the rural/urban sector. However, allocation will be adjusted in case of constraints of sample size. Thus, allocations may be more than 4 or less than 4 in some cases.

1.4.11 Selection of FSUs within a stratum/sub-stratum:

1.4.11.1 From all the sub-strata in both rural and urban sector within each stratum, required number of FSUs will be selected by Simple Random Sampling Without Replacement (SRSWOR) scheme.

1.4.12 Formation of sub-units and listing of households

1.4.12.1 Proper identification of the FSU boundaries: The first task of the field investigators is to ascertain the exact boundaries of the village as per its identification particulars given in the sample list. The village may either itself be a sample FSU or may contain a sample FSU (i.e. SU). For urban samples, the boundaries of the UFS block may similarly be identified by referring to the map for that UFS block.

1.4.12.2 Procedure of formation of SUs: After identification of the boundaries of the village/ UFS block which contains the sample FSU, the village/ UFS block is to be divided into the number of SUs (say, D) as given in the sample list by more or less equalising the present population of the village/UFS block in which the sample FSUs are located. It is to be ensured that SUs formed are clearly identifiable in terms of physical landmarks. For villages/blocks where the number of SUs to be formed is 1 as per the sample list, no SU formation is required.

1.4.12.3 Listing of households: All the households of the sample FSU will be listed. Temporarily locked households will also be listed after ascertaining the temporariness of locking of households through local enquiry.

1.4.13 Formation of Sub-divisions in the selected SU: It has been observed in the previous rounds that there happen to be some extreme cases where the population/household of the selected SU is very high and listing becomes very difficult. To take care of such extreme situations, such SU may be sub-divided into a number of smaller units (sub-divisions) and one of them may be randomly selected. Listing and selection of households may be done in the selected sub-division unit only. The procedure for formation of sub-divisions is same as that of formation of SUs within village/blocks. The listing of hamlets will not be required but sub-divisions will be formed such that each sub-division has more or less equal population and is a compact area.

The criteria for determining the number of sub-divisions (D_1) to be formed in the selected rural/urban SUs is as follows:

Approx. population of the SU	no. of sub-divisions (D_1) to be formed
less than 1800	1
1800 to 2399	2
2400 to 3599	3
3600 to 4799	4
4800 to 5999	5
.....and so on	....

1.4.13.1 Special case:

1.4.13.1.1 For rural areas of (i) Himachal Pradesh, (ii) Sikkim, (iii) Andaman & Nicobar Islands, (iv) Uttarakhand (except four districts Dehradun, Nainital, Hardwar and Udham Singh Nagar), (v) Punch, Rajouri, Udhampur, Reasi, Doda, Kishtwar, Ramban of Jammu (vi) Leh

and Kargil districts of Ladakh region and (vii) Idukki district of Kerala, the criterion for determining the number of sub-divisions (D_1) to be formed in rural SUs is as follows:

Approx. population of the SU	no. of sub-divisions to be formed
less than 900	1
900 to 1199	2
1200 to 1799	3
1800 to 2399	4
2400 to 2999	5
.....and so on	....

1.4.14 Formation of second stage strata (SSS) of households and allocation among SSS:

A number of second-stage strata will be formed separately for Schedules 21.1 and 5.1 by grouping the households according to specified criteria as described below.

1.4.14.1 **Tourism Survey:** A cut-off points 'A' will be determined from household's usual monthly consumer expenditure collected in Schedule 21.1: Domestic Tourism Expenditure of NSS 72nd round (July 2014 – June 2015) data (with proper adjustments using price indices) for each NSS region for both rural and urban areas separately, in such a way that top 40% of the population have MPCE more than 'A'. Composition of the SSS and number of households to be surveyed from different SSS, *for both rural and urban sectors*, will be as follows:

SSS	composition of SSS	number of households to be surveyed	
Rural/Urban			
1	households having at least one member who completed overnight trip during last 365 days for medical/ holidaying/ shopping purpose	with UMPCE > A	2
2		with UMPCE ≤ A	2
3	from the remaining, households having at least one member who completed any other overnight trip during last 30 days	with UMPCE > A	2
4		with UMPCE ≤ A	2
5	other households		2
Total			10

1.4.14.2 Multiple Indicator Survey

1.4.14.2.1 Five SSS will be formed in both rural and urban sectors. The composition of the SSS and number of households to be surveyed from different SSS for both rural and urban sectors are as follows:

SSS	composition of SSS	number of households to be surveyed
Rural/Urban		
1	household size more than 7	2
2	from the remaining, households who had constructed/purchased any new house/flat for residential purpose after 31 st March 2014	with UMPCE > A
3		with UMPCE ≤ A
4	from the remaining households	with UMPCE > A
5		with UMPCE ≤ A
Total		20

1.4.15 **Selection of households:** The sample households from each SSS for each of the schedules will be selected by SRSWOR.

1.5 Concepts and Definitions:

1.5.0 Important concepts and definitions used in different schedules of this survey are explained below.

1.5.1 **Population coverage:** The following rules regarding the population to be covered are to be remembered in listing of households and persons:

1. Under-trial prisoners in jails and indoor patients of hospitals, nursing homes etc., are to be excluded, but residential staff therein will be listed while listing is done in such institutions. The persons of the first category will be considered as members of their parent households and will be counted there. Convicted prisoners undergoing sentence will be outside the coverage of the survey.
2. Floating population, i.e., persons without any normal residence will not be listed. But households residing in open space, roadside shelter, under a bridge, etc., more or less regularly in the same place, will be listed.
3. Neither the foreign nationals nor their domestic servants will be listed, if by definition the latter belong to the foreign national's household. If, however, a foreign national becomes an Indian citizen for all practical purposes, he or she will be covered.
4. Persons residing in barracks of military and paramilitary forces (like police, BSF, etc.) will be kept outside the survey coverage due to difficulty in conduct of survey therein. However, civilian population residing in their neighbourhood, including the family quarters of service personnel, are to be covered. Permission for this may have to be obtained from the appropriate authorities.

5. Orphanages, rescue homes, ashrams and vagrant houses are outside the survey coverage. However, the residential staff of these institutions may be listed. People staying in old age homes will be covered in the survey.

1.5.2 **House:** Every structure, tent, shelter, etc. is a house irrespective of its use. It may be used for residential or non-residential purpose or both or even may be vacant.

1.5.3 **Household:** A group of persons normally living together and taking food from a common kitchen will constitute a household. It will include temporary stay-aways (those whose total period of absence from the household is expected to be less than 6 months during the survey period) but exclude temporary visitors and guests (expected total period of stay less than 6 months during the survey period). Even though the determination of the actual composition of a household will be left to the judgment of the head of the household, the following procedures will be adopted as guidelines.

(i) Each inmate (including residential staff) of a hostel, mess, hotel, boarding and lodging house, etc., will constitute a single-member household. If, however, a group of persons among them normally pool their income for spending, they will together be treated as forming a single household. For example, a family living in a hotel will be treated as a single household.

(ii) In deciding the composition of a household, more emphasis is to be placed on 'normally living together' than on 'ordinarily taking food from a common kitchen'. In case the place of residence of a person is different from the place of boarding, he or she will be treated as a member of the household with whom he or she resides.

(iii) A resident employee, or domestic servant, or a paying guest (but not just a tenant in the household) will be considered as a member of the household with whom he or she resides even though he or she is not a member of the same family.

(iv) When a person sleeps in one place (say, in a shop or in a room in another house because of space shortage) but usually takes food with his or her family, he or she should be treated not as a single member household but as a member of the household in which other members of his or her family stay.

(v) If a member of a family (say, a son or a daughter of the head of the family) stays elsewhere (say, in hostel for studies or for any other reason), he/ she will not be considered as a member of his/ her parent's household. However, he/ she will be listed as a single member household if the hostel is listed.

1.5.4 **Household size:** The number of members of a household is its size.

1.5.5 **Household's usual monthly consumer expenditure (Rs.):** This information is collected to classify the households into different UMPCE (Usual Monthly Per Capita Consumption Expenditure) classes. Household consumer expenditure (HCE) is the sum total of monetary values of all goods and services consumed (out of purchase or procured otherwise) by the household on domestic account during a reference period. Procedure for deciding consumption of goods and services by a household is same as that followed in Consumer Expenditure Survey (Schedule 1.0) of NSS. Unusual expenditures, such as expenditure on

social ceremonies, capitation fee, hospitalization, etc., are to be excluded for deriving usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household. However, expenditure on household durable goods is to be included.

Household's usual monthly consumer expenditure will be derived through the following items:

- (i) usual consumer expenditure in a month for household purposes out of purchase of goods and services ***excluding items like clothing, footwear*** (A)
- (ii) imputed value of usual consumption in a month from home grown stock like, rice, cereals, pulses, vegetables, milk, firewood, chips, cow dung, etc. (B)
- (iii) imputed value of usual consumption in a month from wages in kind, free collection, gifts, etc. (C)
- (iv) expenditure on purchase of items like clothing, footwear, etc. **during last 365 days** (D)
- (v) expenditure on purchase of household durables like bedstead, furniture, vehicles, TV, fridge, fans, cooler, AC, mobile, computer, kitchen equipment, etc. **during last 365 days** (E)

In (i) to (v) entry will be made in whole number in rupees.

From the entries in (i) to (v), UMPCE will be derived in whole number of rupees rounded to the nearest rupee as: $[A + B + C + (D+E)/12]$

(i) Usual consumer expenditure in a month for household purposes out of purchase of goods and services *excluding items like clothing, footwear* (A)

Regular monthly expenditure incurred by the household for purchase of goods and services for household purposes will be included here ***whereas expenses on items like clothing, footwear and purchase of durable goods will be excluded from the coverage of this item.*** Further, cash remittances should not be reported under this item.

(ii) Imputed value of usual consumption in a month from home grown stock like, rice, cereals, pulses, vegetables, milk, firewood, chips, cow dung, etc. (B): There are some households, especially in rural areas, who use items of household consumer goods like rice, cereals, pulses, vegetables, milk, firewood & chips, cow dung etc., from home grown stock on a regular basis. For households who use items of household consumer goods from home grown stock on ***regular basis***, the imputed value of such usual consumption in a month at ex farm/ex factory price will be recorded here.

(iii) Imputed value of usual consumption in a month from wages in kind, free collection, gifts, etc. (C): There are some households who regularly consume goods and services that are received in exchange of goods and services provided by them. For wage salaried employees, such services received could be perquisites like free electricity, free telephone services, free medical services, etc. For agricultural labourers, such goods and

services received could be food-grains, vegetables, meals etc., as payment for wages in kind. In some cases it may also happen that household regularly consumes goods and services received as gifts or obtained through free collection. For households who regularly consume goods and services received as wages in kind, in exchange of goods provided by them, as gifts or obtained through free collection, etc., the imputed value of such usual consumption in a month at local retail prices will be recorded here. Mid-day meals received by household members also will be considered for making entries against this item.

(iv) Expenditure on purchase of items like clothing, footwear, etc. during last 365 days (D): Expenditure on purchase of items like clothing footwear, etc., which generally are not purchased on a regular basis during the last 365 days will be recorded in here.

(v) Expenditure on purchase of household durables like bedstead, furniture, vehicles, TV, fridge, fans, cooler, AC, mobile, computer, kitchen equipment, etc. during last 365 days (E): Expenditure incurred by the household during the last 365 days for purchase of household durable goods like, bedstead, furniture, vehicles, TV sets, fridge, fans, cooler, AC, mobile phones, computers, kitchen equipment, etc., will be recorded here. Expenditure for construction of household durable goods will not be considered for reporting in this item.

Special procedure for expense on tuition fees, hostel room charges and hostel mess charges:

- If these expenses are incurred with a monthly periodicity, they will naturally come under 'A'. But if they are incurred semester-wise, or quarterly or annually, the average expenditure per month is to be calculated and included in 'A'.
- Note, however, that in case of hostel students, these expenditures should be accounted in the student's household and not in the 'parent' household. This is because rent and tuition fees regularly paid by a household (parent household) for a member of another household (usually a hostel student) are covered by the Use Approach.
- For simplicity, the above procedure will be followed for tuition fees paid for non-hostel students as well. That is, if tuition fees are not paid monthly and therefore not reported in 'A', the monthly average over a year will be included in 'A'.

1.5.6 Economic activity: The entire spectrum of human activity falls into two categories: economic activity and non-economic activity. Any activity that results in production of goods and services that adds value to national product is considered as an economic activity. The economic activities have two parts - market activities and non-market activities. Market activities are those that involve remuneration to those who perform it, i.e., activity performed for pay or profit. Such activities include production of all goods and services for market including those of government services, etc. Non-market activities are those involving the production of primary commodities for own consumption and own account production of fixed assets.

1.5.6.1 The full spectrum of economic activities as defined in the UN System of National Accounts (SNA 2008) is not covered in the definition adopted for capturing information on the usual activity particulars of the household members. Production of any good for own consumption is considered as economic activity by UN System of National Accounts but production of only primary goods for own consumption is considered as economic activity in

NSS surveys. While the former includes activities like own account processing of primary products among other things, in the NSS surveys, processing of primary products for own consumption is not considered as economic activity. However, it may be noted that 'production of agricultural goods for own consumption' covering all activities up to and including stages of threshing and storing of produce for own consumption, comes under the coverage of the economic activities in NSS surveys.

1.5.6.2 The term 'economic activity' in the context of collection of information on usual principal activity status particulars of the household members will include:

(i) all the market activities described above, i.e., the activities performed for pay or profit which result in production of goods and services for exchange,

(ii) of the non-market activities,

(a) all the activities relating to the primary sector (i.e., **industry Divisions 01 to 09 of NIC-2008**) which result in production (including free collection of uncultivated crops, forestry, firewood, hunting, fishing, mining, quarrying, etc.) of primary goods, including threshing and storing of grains for own consumption.

and

(b) the activities relating to the own-account production of fixed assets. Own account production of fixed assets include construction of own houses, roads, wells, etc., and of machinery, tools, etc., for household enterprise and also construction of any private or community facilities free of charge. A person may be engaged in own account construction in the capacity of either a labourer or a supervisor.

The activities like prostitution, begging, etc., which may result in earning, will not be considered as economic activities for the survey.

1.5.7 Activity status: It is the activity situation relating to participation in economic and / or non-economic activities in which a person is found engaged during a reference period. According to this, a person will be in one or a combination of the following three broad activity statuses during a reference period:

(i) Working or being engaged in economic activity (work),

(ii) Being not engaged in economic activity (work) and either making tangible efforts to seek 'work' or being available for 'work' if the 'work' is available and

(iii) Being not engaged in any economic activity (work) and also not available for 'work'.

Activity statuses, as mentioned in (i) & (ii) above, are associated with 'being in labour force' and the last with 'not being in the labour force'. Within the labour force, activity status (i) above is associated with 'employment' and activity status (ii) with 'unemployment'. During

the reference period of last 365 days, by adopting the procedure to determine the broad activity statuses, each person is classified in one of the three broad activity statuses. Persons found with the broad activity statuses (i), (ii) and (iii), during the reference period, are employed (worker), unemployed and 'not in labour force', respectively.

1.5.7.1 The detailed activity categories for these broad activity statuses are as below:

(i) *working or being engaged in economic activity (employed):*

- (a) worked in household enterprise (self-employed) as an own-account worker
- (b) worked in household enterprise (self-employed) as an employer
- (c) worked in household enterprise (self-employed) as 'helper'
- (d) worked as regular salaried/wage employee
- (e) worked as casual wage labour in public works
- (f) worked as casual wage labour in other types of works

(ii) *not working but seeking or available for work (unemployed)*

(iii) *not working and also not available for work (not in labour force) :*

- (a) attended educational institution
- (b) attended domestic duties only
- (c) attended domestic duties and was also engaged in free collection of goods (vegetables, roots, firewood, cattle-feed etc) sewing, tailing, weaving, etc. for household use
- (d) rentiers, pensioners, remittance recipients, etc.
- (e) not able to work due to disability
- (f) others

1.5.8 The various constituents of 'employed', 'unemployed', 'labour force', 'out of labour force' are as explained below:

(a) ***Workers (or employed):*** Persons who, during the reference period, are engaged in any economic activity or who, despite their attachment to economic activity, have temporarily abstained from work for reasons of illness, injury or other physical disability, bad weather, festivals, social or religious functions or other contingencies constitute workers. Unpaid helpers who assist in the operation of an economic activity in the household farm or non-farm activities are also considered as workers.

(b) ***Seeking or available for work (or unemployed):*** Persons, who, during the reference period, owing to lack of work, had not worked but either sought work through employment exchanges, intermediaries, friends or relatives or by making applications to prospective employers or expressed their willingness or availability for work *under the prevailing condition of work and remuneration* are considered as those who are 'seeking or available for work' (or unemployed).

However, if it is found that a student is currently on the *live* register of the Employment Exchange, the person will normally be categorised as a student. But before categorising him/her as a student, further probes should be made as to whether he/she will give up his/her studies the moment he/she gets a job. If it is found that he/she will leave his studies to take up the job for which he/she has registered, he/she will be considered as unemployed.

(c) **Labour force:** Persons who are either 'working' (or employed) or 'seeking or available for work' (or unemployed) during the reference period together constitute the labour force.

(d) **Out of labour force:** Persons who are neither 'working' and at the same time nor 'seeking or available for work' for various reasons during the reference period are considered to be 'out of labour force'. The persons under this category are students, those engaged in domestic duties, rentiers, pensioners, recipients of remittances, those living on alms, infirm or disabled persons, too young or too old persons, prostitutes, etc. and casual labourers not working due to sickness.

1.5.9 It may be noted that workers have been further categorized as *self-employed, regular wage/ salaried employee and casual wage labourer*. These categories are defined in the following paragraphs.

1.5.10 **Self-employed:** Persons who operate their own farm or non-farm enterprises or are engaged independently in a profession or trade on own-account or with one or a few partners are deemed to be self-employed in household enterprises. The essential feature of the self-employed is that they have *autonomy* (i.e., how, where and when to produce) and *economic independence* (i.e., market, scale of operation and money) for carrying out their operation. The remuneration of the self-employed consists of a non-separable combination of two parts: a reward for their labour and profit of their enterprise. The combined remuneration is given by the revenue from sale of output produced by self-employed persons *minus* the cost of purchased inputs in production.

The self-employed persons may again be categorised into the following three groups:

- (i) **own-account workers:** They are the self-employed who operate their enterprises on their own account or with one or a few partners and who during the reference period by and large, run their enterprise without hiring any labour. They may, however, have unpaid helpers to assist them in the activity of the enterprise.
- (ii) **employers:** The self-employed persons who work on their own account or with one or a few partners and by and large run their enterprise by hiring labour are the employers, and
- (iii) **helpers in household enterprise:** The helpers are a category of self-employed persons mostly family members who keep themselves engaged in their household enterprises, working full or part time and do not receive any regular salary or wages in return for the

work performed. They do not run the household enterprise on their own but assist the related person living in the same household in running the household enterprise.

1.5.10.1 There is a category of workers who work at a place of their choice which is outside the establishment that employs them or buys their product. Different expressions like ‘home workers’, ‘home based workers’ and ‘out workers’ are generally used synonymously for such workers. For the purpose of this survey, all such workers will be categorised as ‘self-employed’. The ‘home workers’ have *some degree of autonomy and economic independence* in carrying out the work, and their work is not directly supervised, as is the case for the *employees*. Like the other self-employed, these workers have to meet certain costs, like actual or imputed rent of the space in which they work, costs incurred for heating, lighting and power, storage or transportation, etc., thereby indicating that they have some tangible or intangible means of production. It may be noted that *employees* are not required to provide such inputs for production.

1.5.10.2 It may further be elaborated that the ‘putting out’ system prevalent in the production process in which a part of production which is ‘put out’ is performed in different household enterprises (and not at the employer’s establishment). For example, *bidi* rollers obtaining orders from a *bidi* manufacturer will be considered as home workers irrespective of whether or not they were supplied raw material (leaves, *masala*, etc.), equipment (scissors) and other means of production. In some cases, the payment may be based on piece rate. Similarly, a woman engaged in tailoring or embroidery work on order from a wholesaler, or making *pappad* at home on order from some particular unit/ contractor/ trader will be treated as ‘home worker’. On the other hand, if she does the work in the employers’ premises, she will be treated as an *employee*. Again, if she is not undertaking these activities on orders from outside, but markets the products by herself/ other household members for profit, she will be considered as an own account worker, if of course, she does not employ any hired help more or less on a regular basis.

1.5.11 **Regular wage/ salaried employee:** Persons working in other’s farm or non-farm enterprises (both household and non-household) and getting in return salary or wages on a regular basis (and not on the basis of daily or periodic renewal of work contract) are the regular wage/ salaried employees. *This category not only includes persons getting time wage but also persons receiving piece wage or salary and paid apprentices, both full time and part-time.*

1.5.12 **Casual wage labour:** A person casually engaged in other’s farm or non-farm enterprises (both household and non-household) and getting in return wage according to the terms of the daily or periodic work contract is a casual wage labour. Usually, in the rural areas, one category of casual labourers can be seen who normally engage themselves in ‘*public works*’ activities. The concepts related to ‘*public works*’ are discussed later in this chapter.

1.5.13 **Usual principal activity status:** The activity status of a person is determined on the basis of the activities pursued by the person during certain specified reference period. The usual principal activity status of a person is determined with a reference period of 365 days

preceding the date of survey. The activity status on which a person spent relatively long time (major time criterion) during the 365 days preceding the date of survey is considered the *usual principal activity status* of the person. To decide the usual principal activity of a person, he/she is first categorised as belonging to the labour force or not, during the reference period **on the basis of major time criterion**. Persons, thus adjudged as not belonging to the labour force are assigned the broad activity status 'neither working nor available for work'. For the persons belonging to the labour force, the broad activity status of either 'working' or 'not working but seeking and/ or available for work' is then ascertained again on the basis of the relatively long time spent in the labour force during the 365 days preceding the date of survey. Within the broad activity status so determined, the detailed activity status category of a person pursuing more than one such activity will be determined again on the basis of the 'relatively long time spent' criterion. Thus, if a person categorised as engaged in economic activity (working) is found to be pursuing more than one economic activity during the reference period, the appropriate detailed activity status category will relate to the activity in which relatively more time has been spent. Similar approach is adopted for non-economic activities also.

1.5.14 Procedure for determining household principal industry and occupation: To determine the household principal industry and occupation, the general procedure to be followed is to list all the occupations pertaining to economic activities pursued by the members of the household excluding those employed by the household and paying guests (who in view of their staying and taking food in the household are considered as its normal members) during the one year period preceding the date of survey. Out of the occupations listed that one which fetched the maximum earnings to the household during the last 365 days preceding the date of survey would be considered as the principal household occupation. It is quite possible that one or more members of the household may pursue the household occupation in different industries. In such cases, the particular industry out of all the different industries corresponding to the principal occupation, which fetched the maximum earnings, should be considered as the principal industry of the household. In extreme cases, the earnings may be equal in two different occupations or industry-occupation combinations. By convention, in such cases, priority will be given to the occupation or industry-occupation combination of the senior-most member. For collection of information on industry, National Industrial Classification-2008 (NIC-2008) will be used and for collection of information on occupation, National Classification of Occupations-2004 (NCO-2004) will be used.

1.5.15 Procedure for determining household type: The household type, based on the means of livelihood of a household, is decided on the basis of the sources of the household's income during the 365 days preceding the date of survey. For this purpose, only the household's income (net income and not gross income) from economic activities is to be considered; but the income of servants and paying guests are not to be taken into account.

The broad household types in both rural and urban areas to be used in this round are *self-employed, regular wage/salary earning, casual labour* and *others*. A household which does not have any income from economic activities during last 365 days preceding the date of survey will be classified under *others*. For the household which have income from economic activities during last 365 days preceding the date of survey will be classified depending on the major source of income during the 365 days preceding the date of survey in any of the

following broad household types in both rural and urban areas: (i) *self-employed*, (ii) *regular wage/salary earning* and (iii) *casual labour*.

In urban areas, the household types are:

Household types in **urban** areas:

self-employed
 regular wage/salary earning
 casual labour
 others

In rural areas, within each of the broad category of *self-employed*, *regular wage/salary earning* and *casual labours* two specific household types will be distinguished, depending on their major income from agricultural activities (sections A of NIC-2008) or non-agricultural activities (rest of the NIC-2008 sections, excluding section A), as follows:

household types in **rural** areas:

self-employed in
 agriculture
 non-agriculture
 regular wage/salary earning in
 agriculture
 non-agriculture
 casual labour in
 agriculture
 non-agriculture
 others

1.5.16 Travel: In general, travel is understood as the movement of persons between different geographic locations specifically different geographical administrative areas (like different villages/towns/cities), for any purpose and any duration. Those who travel are referred to as travellers. Travel can occur within a country (domestic travel) or involve more than one country (international travel). Domestic trip (defined later, separately for overnight and same-day) is a subset of domestic travel.

1.5.17 Usual Place of Residence: The usual place of residence (UPR) of a person is the place (village/town) where the person has been staying continuously for at least six months immediately prior to the date of survey. Even if a person was not staying in the village/town continuously for six months immediately prior to the date of survey but is presently staying there with intention to stay there continuously for six months then that place should be taken as his/her UPR.

1.5.18 Usual Environment: The usual environment (UE) of an individual refers to the notional geographical space, including his/her UPR, within which he/she moves more or less regularly and frequently (daily/ every alternate day or at least once in a week repeatedly/ likely to be repeated for more than six months for the same purpose) irrespective of the distance.

The usual environment of an individual includes the usual place of residence of the household to which he/she belongs, his/her own place of work or study and any other place that he/she visits more or less regularly and frequently, even when this place is located far away from his/her usual place of residence.

Box 1: Relevance of usual environment in identifying a trip

The purpose of introducing the concept of usual environment is to **exclude** the travellers who move regularly between their UPR and place of work or study, or more or less regularly and frequently visit places, for instance homes of friends or relatives, shopping centers, religious, health care or any other facilities, between geographical locations irrespective of their distance.

1.5.19 Domestic Overnight Trip: A **domestic overnight trip** is one with a main destination within the country of residence of the visitor. It refers to a movement - for a duration of **not less than twelve hours (including 12 midnight to 5 A.M.) in two consecutive calendar days (i.e. crossing midnight or 00-00 hours)** and of **not more than 365days**- by one or more household members outside their *usual environment (which includes the usual place of residence (UPR)) and return to the same UPR (a round trip)*, irrespective of place of stay during this period.

All the movements of household member by air would constitute an overnight trip, if duration of stay outside the UPR just includes 12 midnight to 5 a.m. spanning two consecutive calendar dates. Thus, in case of air travel, the *minimum 12 hours criterion* as well as the condition for excluding ‘*more or less frequent and regular movement*’ is not necessary for considering as domestic overnight trip.

The movement should be for any of the following purposes:

- Business
- Holidaying, leisure & recreation
- Social
- Pilgrimage&Religious
- Education and Training
- Health and Medical
- Shopping
- Others

For operational convenience, to determine a trip, duration of movement outside UPR may be taken as the time between going out and returning to residence. It is also to be remembered that trip completed, not started, during the reference period of last 365 days/last 30 days from the date of survey should be considered. Trips may have been started beyond the reference period too.

The followings are **excluded** from the purview of domestic trip:

- i. Any movement for the purposes of migration or getting employed or setting up of residence in that place.
- ii. Movements between UPR and the place of work or study.
- iii. All movements, made more or less regularly and frequently from the UPR and back (daily/ every alternate day or at least once in a week) for shopping, visiting family, for religious purpose, health and medical care, education and training, etc., repeatedly/likely to be repeated for a period of more than six months for the same purpose, should not be considered as trips irrespective of the distance travelled.
- iv. All the trips completed during the reference period by former household members who are currently not a member of that selected household.

Box 2: Some specific examples for domestic overnight trips

- i) An individual attended a social function in a relative's house by leaving his / her UPR at 5 p.m. on 21.08. 2019 and returned to his / her UPR at 5 a.m. on 22.08.2019. This movement will be considered as overnight trip.
- ii) An individual (household member) stays in a mess in Mumbai to attend his office. Every weekend he goes to his home at Pune by Bus, where his family leaves. His movements between Pune to Mumbai every weekend will not considered as overnight trip.
- iii) A nurse, living in Delhi, performs her night duty daily in a hospital located at Faridabad. Her movements from Delhi to Faridabad will not be qualified as overnight trip as these are due to her work. But if on a particular day she came from Delhi to Faridabad, to attend a social function and spent night there, then that particular movement will be an overnight trip.
- iv) A patient visits health centre far away from his UPR every week for medical treatment continuously for three months. He stays at night in his relative's house near the health centre. These movements will be treated as overnight trips.

A trip is uniquely specified by its leading purpose, main destination, number of household members in the trip being together (**with variation of up to 3 days**). 'Being together' means being in the same town or village for most of the time during the trip and also starting and /or ending trip together. If they did not start and end their trip together, they can either start together but end the trip with a variation of up to 3 days or vice-versa.

In some cases trips may be reported for which the set of destinations differs slightly from person to person (among household members who undertook the trip). Even in such cases, if the persons are together for most of the time in the trip, they will be considered to be on the same trip. But if two members of a household spent most of the time away from each other during the period since leaving their residence to returning to their residence, then they will be considered to have been on two different trips even though their starting and returning dates may be the same.

Box 3: Examples to identify separate trips

(i) A couple goes to pilgrimage and at the time of return journey, wife goes to her mother's house which is not in the same UPR while husband returns to his UPR. After staying 10 days at her mother's house, wife returns. It will be considered as two separate trips for husband and wife, as she returns to her UPR after more than 3 days, since her husband had returned.

(ii) A son and his mother residing in Kolkata (their UPR) went to their relatives' residence in Delhi. Within a day, the son went on a trek to Kedarnath. He returned after one week. The mother stayed in Delhi and returned to Kolkata with her son two days after her son's return from the trek. Here the mother and son will be considered to have performed two separate trips because they have not been together for the major part of the period between leaving their UPR and returning back

1.5.20 Domestic Overnight Visitor: A *domestic overnight visitor* is a person (household member), residing in the country, who performs an overnight trip.

1.5.21 Starting month: The month in which a particular trip has been started from UPR is the starting month of that trip. It may sometimes happen that many members of a household are travelling together on a trip. In some cases, one or more members among those who go on a trip may start later than the rest. In such cases earliest starting date of that trip by any household member shall be considered to determine the starting month of the trip.

1.5.22 Purpose & Leading Purpose: The *purpose of a trip* for a household member is that purpose but for which he/she would not have undertaken the trip. Whereas the *leading purpose of a trip* is that purpose without which none of the household members in that trip would have undertaken the trip. Leading purpose of a trip should be same for all the members in that trip.

1.5.23 Different purposes of trip under the survey coverage

(i) Business: This category includes trips of employees of Government, public or private organisations or of self-employed people, trips for installation of equipment, inspection, purchase and sale for enterprise; for attending conferences, congresses, trade fairs and exhibitions; for delivering lectures or concerts; for participation in professional sport activities, etc.

(ii) Holidaying, leisure and recreation: This category includes sightseeing, attending sporting and cultural events, non-professional active sports, adventure sports, recreational activities, cultural activities, visiting second home, holidays at beaches and hill stations, summer camps, dining out, visiting spas and other establishments specialized in well-being, fitness except in the context of a medical treatment (in which case the purpose would be health & medical), etc.

(iii) Social: This category includes visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages / any other family events / other social functions, visiting home town, visits to arrange short-term caring for the baby, sick or old; etc.

(iv) Pilgrimage & religious activities: This category includes attending various religious meetings and events, and undertaking pilgrimages to different places of worship or holy places.

(v) Education and training: This category includes trips to join short-term residential educational courses, education and research programmes, acquiring specific skills through formal on-the-job training including paid study, etc.

The trip of a professional academician (e.g. college lecturer/school teacher) for acquiring a certain academic qualification would come under this category. However, if his trip primarily involves delivering academic lectures then the purpose of his trip should be reported not as *education and training* but as *business*.

(vi) Health and Medical: This category includes trips to spa, fitness and health resorts, treatments and cures, ayurvedic and other health resorts of traditional medicines, etc., for **getting medical treatment**.

(vii) Shopping: This category includes purchasing of consumer goods for own personal use or as gifts but not for resale or for productive purposes (in which case the purpose would be *business*).

Box 4: Example of trip for shopping

A household member came to a big city every week for a month from his village (UPR) for shopping for his daughter's marriage. He spent night somewhere in the city on each occasion. Each of these movements will be an overnight trip with leading purpose 'shopping'.

1.5.24 **Others:** This category includes purposes which are not indicated elsewhere but are within the coverage of this survey.

Box 5: Example of trip for 'other' purpose

i) Making a trip to render some social service, such as attending a blood donation camp to donate blood or for relief camps after natural calamities etc. will come under this category.

ii) A person (member of sample household) accompanied a patient (not a household member) to Vellore from Kolkata and stayed for 3 nights. This will be an overnight trip with purpose 'others' for the person who was accompanying the patient.

Box 6: Example showing difference of leading purpose of the trip and purpose of trip by the different members in the trip

A person is going to Benaras from Delhi for an official trip. His wife is also accompanying him to visit the holy city Benaras on pilgrimage. Here leading purpose of this trip will be business and purpose of trip for husband will be 'business' and that for his wife will be 'pilgrimage & religious'.

1.5.25 Domestic Overnight Tourism: It covers overnight trips by household members within the territory of India, either as a domestic trip or as domestic part of an international trip.

Box 7: Example of domestic part of international trip

One person is going abroad. He travels by train and road from Kharagpur to Kolkata and then avails 'Air' from Kolkata to Bangkok. Here domestic component will be his travel from his UPR to Kolkata airport and from Kolkata airport to his UPR.

1.5.26 Main Destination: The *main destination* of a trip is defined as the place, visiting of which is central to the decision to undertake the trip. However, if no such place can be identified by the informant, the main destination is to be defined as the place where the visitors spent most of their time during the trip. If the visitors spent the same amount of time in two or more places during the trip, then the main destination is defined as the one among these places that is the farthest from the usual place of residence of the visitors.

Box 8: Example illustrating identification of main destination

A family went for "Char Dham Yatra" located in northern, eastern, southern and western region of India. They stayed 3 days each at three different places and 4 days in another place. The place where they stayed for 4 days will be treated as the main destination. If they stayed 3 days in all the places then main destination will be the place which is farthest from their UPR.

1.5.27 Type of trip: A trip could be of two types: *package* and *non-package*. The term package trip, to be used in the survey, is described below.

1.5.28 Package Trip: A package trip consists of a "tourism product" provided by a tour-operator which elaborates it and sells it directly or through travel agencies. Within a package trip, travellers receive a combination of products associated with a trip, which are made of more than one of the following tourism services: *transportation services, accommodation services, food serving services, sightseeing services, entertainment services, etc.* and other goods and services.

The components of a package trip might be pre-established or tailor-made, in which case, the visitor chooses a combination of services he / she wishes to acquire from a pre-established list of such services. ***If such a package is availed of for the major part of time in a trip, such a trip should be considered as a package trip.***

If the expenditure on more than one chargeable travel services availed for some time during the trip does cover only a minor time of the duration of the trip then such a trip should **not** be considered as package trip although the trip has a package component. A package trip may

have a non-package component in addition to package component, e.g., a visitor may avail himself of accommodation and other services in the package through some tour operator but make some special sight-seeing arrangements in some places of visit in the trip on his own. Similarly, a trip, which is non-package, may also have package component in addition to non-package component.

Box 9: Package and non-package components of a trip

(i) A trip can be either package or non-package but not both simultaneously. Package trip can have package component and non-package component. Similarly a non-package trip can also have package component and non-package component.

(ii) A video coach operator charged for transport and sightseeing along with guide while the tourists have met expenses for food etc. This trip is considered as package trip.

(iii) One person went to Delhi and returned by Rajdhani Express after one day. This will not be a package trip though food is included with ticket price.

1.5.29 Mode of travel: *Mode of travel* refers to means of transport used by visitor(s) to travel in a trip. The travel relevant here is the travelling done to cover the distances to the destinations and not joyrides or movement for adventure, as in skiing or boating for pleasure, or walking inside a museum, fort or maze. Visitor(s) may be using one or more means of transport in a trip.

1.5.30 Major and minor mode of travel: The means of transport by which maximum distance was travelled will be treated as ‘major’ *mode of travel* for that trip. In case more than one such mode was there [e.g. train, air] for which equal distance was travelled then entry to be recorded for that means which was more expensive.

The means of transport by which second maximum distance was travelled will be treated as ‘minor’ *mode of travel* for that trip.

1.5.31 Type of stay: The *type of stay* refers to the accommodation used for stay by visitor(s) in an overnight trip. Accommodation refers to the space, whether paid or unpaid, where the visitor(s) spent some considerable time for spending night, taking rest, spending some leisure time, refreshing oneself, etc. during the trip. It could be hotel, guest house, dharamshala, rented house, friends & relatives, homestay, others (carriages / coaches, railway station, ship/boat, waiting rooms, airport lounge etc.)

1.5.32 Major and minor type of stay: The place where the maximum number of nights was spent will be treated as ‘major’ type of stay. In case more than one such place was there (e.g. hotel, Dharamshala) where same number of nights was spent then entry to be recorded for that type which was more expensive. The place where second highest number of nights was spent will be treated as ‘minor’ type of stay.

1.5.33 Number of nights spent outside usual place of residence (including journey): The number of nights spent by the visitor outside his/her usual place of residence from starting of the trip to the completion of the trip, including the nights spent in transit.

1.5.34 Tourism Expenditure: For the purpose of this survey tourism expenditure shall include expenditure made not just during the trip but also the expenditure related to the trip even if made before or after the trip. It shall include all expenses related to the trip **paid or payable** by the household. It shall also include expenditure related to the trip, whether directly paid or reimbursed, by some institution like Government, other agencies or other households on behalf of the selected household. All expenditure in connection with the trip **except** those to be used / intended to be used for productive purposes/enterprises shall be included. **All the expenditure incurred and/ or to be incurred relating to the trip completed by the member (s) of the sample household during the reference period is to be included irrespective of the source of expenditure, i.e. whether the expenditure has been incurred and / or to be incurred by the sample household or not.** The total expenditure, irrespective of mode of payment, should be recorded.

The component of tourism expenditure shall be classified as under:

- a) Package component
- b) Non-package component, which may be further sub-divided as below:
 - i. Accommodation
 - ii. Food and drink
 - iii. Transport
 - iv. Recreation, religious, cultural, sporting and health related activities
 - v. Shopping
 - vi. Others

Expenditure on Tourism will be collected from the household that undertook the trip irrespective of whether the expenditure is paid or payable by them or by some other agency/ household on their behalf

Tourism expenditure shall include

- Monetary expenditure on goods and services paid or payable by the visitor out of his/her own pocket or reimbursed by some institution like Government or other agencies/individuals or expenses related to the trip directly paid by such institutions/individuals;
- Expenditure incurred on items of high unit values like cars, computers, etc. during a trip if those are used for consumption purpose and not for productive purpose.

Tourism expenditure shall exclude

- The payment of taxes and duties not levied on products (goods and services);
- The purchase of financial and non-financial assets, including land, housing and real estate
- All transfers of cash or used goods such as donations to charities or to members of other households as these do not correspond to the purchase of consumption goods or services from these charities or individuals. Alms, bribes, cash tips, cash gifts, etc. are also excluded.
- The payment of all classes of interest, including those on expenditures made during and for trips
- The course fee paid during the educational trips

1.5.35 Domestic Same-day Trip: A **domestic same-day trip** is one that does not involve an overnight stay (i.e., duration of more than 12 hrs and incl. 12 midnight to 5 A.M.) but fulfil other conditions of overnight trips, irrespective of the number of hours spent on the trip.

Same-day trip can be either completed on a same calendar date or spread over two consecutive calendar dates with a main destination within the country of residence of the visitor, for any of the following purposes:

- Business
- Holidaying, leisure & recreation
- Social
- Pilgrimage & Religious
- Education and Training
- Health and Medical
- Shopping
- Others

Like in overnight trips, all movements of persons, whose nature of work/job is regular touring outside their UPR to different places, like, mobile hawkers, on-board staff of airlines /ship/ railways or of buses or of hired taxis and other public transports, etc. would **not** be considered as trips (overnight or same-day). However movements of medical representatives, sales executives, field investigators, who have to travel to different places, other than their main place of work from where they report to their controlling officer/ get salary etc., in relation to their official work/ business, shall be considered as trips.

Box 10: Illustrations of same-day trip

- i) A person had to go to a doctor's chamber away from his UPR due to some ailment for 15 consecutive days and returned back on the same-day. All these movements will be taken as same-day trip.
- ii) Movements of a field investigator to the field and returning back to UPR on the same-day for surveys, would qualify as same-day trips, irrespective of the places visited are same or not. However, movements performed by them to attend office for reporting, salary, etc. would not be considered as same-day trip.
- iii) A person went to attend a marriage party outside his UPR at 7 p.m. He returned back to his home at 1 a.m. on the next calendar date. This movement will be considered for same-day trip.
- iv) It may be noted that trips may have started before the reference period but should be completed within the reference period for consideration within the coverage of trip in this survey.

1.5.36 Domestic Same Day Visitor: A *domestic same-day visitor* is a person (household member), residing in the country, who performs a same-day trip.

1.5.37 Land possessed: The area of land possessed will include land 'owned', 'leased in' and 'land neither owned nor leased in' (i.e. encroached) by the household but exclude land 'leased

out'. The total land area possessed by the household as on the date of survey is taken into account. Note that

- A piece of land is considered to be owned by the household if permanent heritable possession with or without the right to transfer the title vests in a member or members of the household. Land held in owner-like possession say, under perpetual lease, hereditary tenure, long-term lease for 30 years or more, etc., will also be considered as land owned.
- As regards lease, land given to others on rent or free by owner of the land without surrendering the right of permanent heritable title is defined as land leased out. Land leased in is defined as land taken by a household on rent or free without any right of permanent or heritable possession. The lease contract may be written or oral.
- For a piece of public/institutional land under the possession of the household, if the household lacks title of ownership and also does not have lease agreement for the use of land transacted, either verbally or in writing, such land will be considered as 'neither owned nor leased in'. Private land (i.e. land owned by the household sector) possessed by the household without title of ownership and occupancy right will *not* be considered in the 'otherwise possessed' category. All private land encroached upon by the household will be treated as leased-in land.
- Land possessed by the household members by virtue of family ties with the owner who stays elsewhere (forms a different household), is also to be treated as a case of land leased in. For such owners (those found to be living away from their family members who are in possession of the land), the land is to be recorded as owned and leased out.
- Land owned, leased in, etc., by a particular household does not include the area of land owned, leased in, etc., by the servants/paying guests who are considered as normal members of the household. However, land owned/cultivated jointly by two or more households may be apportioned to determine the land owned/cultivated by any one of them.
- Land possessed by the households living in a block of flats is to be calculated by apportioning the total area occupied by the building among the households in proportion to the size of the flats.

1.5.38 **Notified slums:** These are areas notified as slums by the concerned State governments, municipalities, corporations, local bodies or development authorities.

1.5.39 **Non-notified slums:** Any compact settlement with a collection of poorly built tenements, mostly of temporary nature, crowded together, usually with inadequate sanitary and drinking water facilities in unhygienic conditions, is considered a slum by the survey, provided at least 20 households live there. *If such a settlement is not notified as a slum, it will be called a non-notified slum.* Note that while a non-notified slum must consist of at least 20 households, no such restriction is imposed in case of notified slums.

1.5.40 **Slums:** The word "slum" will refer to *both notified slums and non-notified slums.*

1.5.41 **Squatter settlement:** Slum like settlements with less than 20 households are considered as squatter settlements. The criteria of 20 households is not restricted within an FSU only but by considering the whole of such an area, which may cut across more than one FSU.

1.5.42 **Computer:** For this survey, a computer will include devices like, desktop computer, laptop computer, notebook, netbook, palmtop, tablet (or similar handheld devices). The description of these are given below:

- I. **Desktop:** A desktop computer (or desktop PC) is a computer that is designed to put in a single location without portability. Generally, the monitor, keyboard and mouse in a desktop computer are separate units.
- II. **Laptop:** A laptop is small, portable personal computer. A laptop computer can be powered by battery or plugged into the unit. Laptop is suitable for use while travelling.
- III. **Notebook:** A notebook is an extremely lightweight portable personal computer, smaller than a laptop model.
- IV. **Netbook:** A netbook is a portable computer that is about half the size of a traditional laptop. These are for the use of those who want a basic computer for Internet and for basic applications such as a word processing. The main difference between netbook and notebook is its functionality. *Netbook is used for content consumption such as listening to music or watching movies while Notebook is used for content making.*
- V. **Palmtop:** A small computer that literally fits in the palm of one's hand is called a Palmtop. Other names for Palmtops are 'hand-held computers' or 'Personal Digital Assistants (PDAs)'.
- VI. **Tablet:** A tablet computer, or simply tablet, is a one-piece mobile computer. Devices typically have a touch screen, with finger or stylus gestures replacing the conventional computer mouse. An on-screen concealable virtual keyboard is usually used for typing.

1.5.43 **Coverage of Education:** Education covers non-formal education which can be acquired through NFEC/TLC/AEC etc and formal education which can be acquired through formal schooling. Formal education covers general, technical, professional, vocational courses offered by schools, colleges, university or other institutions.

1.5.44 Type of institution:

1.5.44.1 **Government institutions:** All schools/ institutions run by central and state governments, public sector undertakings, autonomous organisations, municipal corporations, municipal committees, notified area committees, zilla parishads, panchayat samitis, cantonment boards, etc., completely financed by the government are treated as government institutions. It may be noted that a government institution may be run by either the government directly or through a governing body/managing committee, etc., set-up by the government.

1.5.44.2 **Private aided by Government:** A private institution aided by Government is one, which is run by an individual or a private organisation and receives maintenance grant from Government.

1.5.44.3 **Private un-aided:** A private unaided institution is one, which is managed by an individual or a private organisation and is not receiving maintenance grant from Government.

1.5.45 **Course:** A course is a structured educational programme having a specified syllabus, duration, level, etc. and it necessarily involve appearing in some kind of examination/ performance appraisal for getting the degree/diploma/certificate or advancing to the next

class/level. Courses are broadly categorised as (i) general and (ii) technical (iii) professional (iv) vocational.

1.5.46 Attendance and enrolment: The current attendance status refers to whether a person is currently attending any educational institution or not. While every person, who is attending an educational institution is necessarily enrolled in that institution, it may so happen that a person, who is enrolled is not currently attending the institution.

1.5.47 Vocational/ Technical Training: A vocational/ technical training may broadly be defined as training through which knowledge and skills for the world of work is acquired. The main objective of vocational/ technical education and training is to make individuals employable for a broad range of occupations in various industries and other economic sectors. Vocational/ Technical Training may be formal or non-formal.

1.5.48 Formal Training: For this survey, formal vocational/technical training refers to structured training programmes outside school, college, university, recognised institutions which leads to diploma/certificate.

1.5.49 Non formal Training: The training which is not structured and does not lead to certification will be considered as non formal vocational/ technical training in MIS. This occurs in daily life, in the family, in the workplace, in communities, and through the interests and activities of individuals.

1.5.50 Household premises: For MIS, household premises is defined as the dwelling unit of the household together with the courtyard, compound, garden, out-house, place of worship, garage, family graveyard, guest house, shop and offices for running household enterprises, tanks, wells, latrines, drains and boundary walls annexed to the dwelling unit which are under the possession of the household (possessed exclusively or possessed with some other households).

1.5.51 Dwelling unit: It is the accommodation availed of by a household for its residential purpose. It may be an entire structure or a part thereof or consisting of more than one structure. There may be cases of more than one household occupying a single structure such as those living in independent flats or sharing a single housing unit, in which case, there will be as many dwelling units as the number of households sharing the structure. There may also be cases of one household occupying more than one structure (i.e. detached structures for sitting, sleeping, cooking, bathing etc) for its housing accommodation. In this case, all the structures together constitute a single dwelling unit. In general, a dwelling unit consists of living room, kitchen, store, bath, latrine, garage, open and closed veranda etc. A structure or a portion thereof used exclusively for non-residential purposes or let out to other households does not form part of the dwelling unit of the household under consideration. However, a portion of a structure used for both residential and non-residential purposes is treated as part of the dwelling unit except when the use of such portion for residential purpose is very nominal. The dwelling unit covers all pucca, semi-pucca and katcha structures used by a household. Households living more or less regularly in tents, under bridges, in pipes, under staircase, in purely temporary flimsy improvisations built by the road side (which are liable to be removed at any moment) etc., are considered to have no dwelling.

1.5.52 Building: Building is a free-standing structure comprising one or more rooms or other spaces covered by a roof and usually enclosed within external walls or dividing walls which extend from the foundation to the roof. Dividing walls refer to the walls of adjoining buildings, which are practically independent of one another and likely to have been built at different times and owned by different persons. If more than one physically separated structure constitute one living unit, all of them together also form a building. Usually, building will have four external walls. But in some areas the nature of building construction is such that it has no walls. Instead, it has a roof which almost touches the ground and it is provided with an entrance. Such structures and also structures standing only on pillars will also be treated as buildings for the purpose of the survey.

1.5.53 Independent house: A dwelling unit is considered as an independent house if it has a separate structure and the structure is not shared with any other household. In other words, if the dwelling unit and the entire structure of the house are physically the same, it should be considered as an independent house. In some parts, particularly in rural areas, two or more structures together may constitute a single housing unit. While the main residence may be in one of the structures, the other structures may be used for sleeping, sitting and for store, bath etc. In all such cases, all the structures together will form a single housing unit and will be treated as an independent house.

1.5.54 Flat: A dwelling unit is considered as a flat if it is a part of a structure which is shared with at least one other household and the dwelling unit has housing facilities of water supply, bathroom and latrine, which are used exclusively by the households or shared with households residing in that structure. If the household reports that the facilities of water supply, bathroom and latrine are shared with households residing in other structures, in such cases also such dwelling units will be considered as flat. If the households residing in flat-like structure without any one of the housing facilities of water supply, bathroom and latrine, these dwelling units will not be classified as flat.

1.5.55 Room: A constructed area with walls or partitions on all side with at least one door way and a roof overhead. Wall / partition means a continuous solid structure (except for the doors, windows, ventilators, air-holes, etc.) extending from floor to ceiling. A constructed space with grill or net on one or more sides in place of wall or partition is not treated as a room. In case of conical shaped structures in which the roof itself is built to the floor level, the roof is also regarded as wall.

1.5.56 Living room: A room with floor area (carpet area) of at least 4 square metres (i.e., approximately 43 square feet), a height of at least 2 metres (i.e., approximately 6.6 feet) from the floor to the highest point in the ceiling and used for living purposes will be considered as a living room. Thus, rooms used as bedroom, sitting room, prayer room, dining room, servant's room - all are considered as living rooms provided they satisfy the size criterion. Kitchen, bathroom, latrine, store, garage etc. are not living rooms. A room used in common for living purpose and as kitchen or store is also considered as living room.

1.5.57 Other room: It is a room which does not satisfy the specification of 4 square metres floor area and 2 metres height from the floor to the highest point of the ceiling or a room which though satisfies the specification, not used for living purposes. A room satisfying the size criterion when shared by more than one household or when used for both residential and business purposes is to be treated as other room.

1.5.58 Veranda: It is a roofed space adjacent to living/other room along the outside of the house and is not walled from all sides. In other words, at least one side of such space is either open or walled only to some height or protected by grill, net, etc. A veranda is considered as a 'covered veranda', if it is protected from all sides and an 'uncovered veranda', if is not protected at least from any one of the sides. A covered veranda may have a door also. Sometimes veranda is used as an access to the room(s). Corridor or passage within the dwelling unit is treated as portion of a room or a veranda depending on its layout. A common corridor or passage used mainly as an access to the dwelling unit will not be considered as veranda.

1.5.59 Last usual place of residence (lpr): Last usual place of residence is referred to be the village/town/country where the household member stayed continuously for 6 months or more before coming to the present village/ town at the place of enumeration.

1.5.60 Migrant: A household member whose last usual place of residence is different from the present place of enumeration is considered as a migrant member in a household.

Table 1: allocation of sample FSUs in NSS 78th round

State/UT	number of sample FSUs					
	central sample			state sample		
	total	rural	urban	total	rural	urban
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
ANDHRA PRADESH	580	356	224	580	356	224
ARUNACHAL PRADESH	240	164	76	240	164	76
ASSAM	468	336	132	468	336	132
BIHAR	948	768	180	948	768	180
CHHATTISGARH	280	160	120	280	160	120
GOA	32	16	16	32	16	16
GUJARAT	632	316	316	632	316	316
HARYANA	276	152	124	276	152	124
HIMACHAL PRADESH	132	84	48	132	84	48
JHARKHAND	352	224	128	352	224	128
KARNATAKA	712	372	340	712	372	340
KERALA	400	200	200	400	200	200
MADHYA PRADESH	780	472	308	780	472	308
MAHARASHTRA	1288	644	644	1612	644	968
MANIPUR	324	176	148	648	352	296
MEGHALAYA	164	112	52	164	112	52
MIZORAM	192	88	104	192	88	104
NAGALAND	156	104	52	260	104	156
ODISHA	500	368	132	500	368	132
PUNJAB	332	172	160	332	172	160
RAJASTHAN	756	488	268	756	488	268
SIKKIM	104	80	24	104	80	24
TAMIL NADU	804	404	400	804	404	400
TELANGANA	368	188	180	736	376	360
TRIPURA	248	168	80	248	168	80
UTTAR PRADESH	1680	1100	580	1680	1100	580
UTTARAKHAND	144	88	56	144	88	56
WEST BENGAL	1004	588	416	1004	588	416
A & N ISLANDS	48	28	20			
CHANDIGARH	24	4	20	24	4	20
D & N HAVELI	24	12	12			
DAMAN & DIU	24	12	12	24	12	12
DELHI	200	12	188	200	12	188
JAMMU & KASHMIR	188	96	92	188	96	92
LADAKH	24	12	12	24	12	12
LAKSHADWEEP	24	8	16			
PUDUCHERRY	48	16	32	48	16	32
ALL - INDIA	14500	8588	5912	15524	8904	6620

Note: (i) 16 more rural FSUs will be allocated to rural special stratum at all-India level

(ii) Minor changes in allocations may be necessary at the time of actual sample selection work.

Chapter Two

Schedule 0.0: List of Households

2.0.0 Introduction: Schedule 0.0 is meant for listing of all the houses and households residing in the sample first stage unit (FSU). Some household information like household size, usual monthly consumer expenditure of a household, whether household members made any overnight trip during last 365 days or 30 days, whether household members constructed/purchased any new house/flat for residential purpose after 31st March 2014 etc. will also be collected in this schedule. These auxiliary information will be used for grouping the households into different second-stage-strata (SSS). The sampling frames for selection of households will be prepared and details of the selection of sample households will be recorded in this schedule. Whenever sub-units (SU) are required to be formed, particulars relating to the formation of SUs and identification of the selected SU are also to be recorded in this schedule. Concepts and definitions of various items have been given in Chapter One.

2.0.1 Structure of the schedule: Schedule 0.0 contains the following blocks:

- Block 0: descriptive identification of sample FSU
- Block 1: identification of sample FSU
- Block 2: particulars of field operations
- Block 3: sketch map for sub-units (SU) formation
- Block 3.1: sketch map of Sub-division formation
- Block 4.1: list of hamlets (only for rural samples with SU formation)
- Block 4.2: list of sub-units (SU) and identification of selected SU
- Block 4.3: list of Sub-divisions of selected SU with population equal to or more than 1800 (900 for special cases) and identification of selected Sub-division
- Block 5A: list of households and structures and record of selection of households for Schedule 21.1
- Block 5B: record of selection of households for Schedule 5.1 (MIS)
- Block 6: particulars of sampling of households
- Block 7: remarks by investigators (JSO/FI)
- Block 8: comments by supervisory officer(s)

2.0.2 Unit of survey: The first stage unit (FSU) is the village/UFS block/SU depending on the sampling frame. The Junior Statistical Officer (JSO)/Field Investigator (FI), on arrival at a sample FSU, will ascertain the exact boundaries of the village/UFS block which contains the SU.

This may be done with the help of the village officials like patwari, panchayat authorities etc. for rural areas and with the help of UFS maps/ ward maps/ town maps in the urban areas.

2.0.3 Formation of sub-units in rural areas: Sub-unit formation will be resorted to in the villages with census 2011 population equal to or more than 1000. A village will be divided into a certain number (D) of sub-units (SUs). The number of SUs to be formed (i.e. the value of D) will be mentioned in the sample list. The criterion for deciding the number of SUs to be formed in a village has been discussed in details in Chapter One.

The procedure for listing hamlets and forming sub-units is outlined below.

2.0.3.1 Procedure: In a large village, there exist usually a few localities or pockets where the houses of the village tend to cluster together. These are called 'hamlets'. In case there are no such recognised hamlets in the village, the census sub-divisions of the village (e.g. enumeration blocks or groups of census house numbers or geographically distinct blocks of houses) may be treated as 'hamlets'. Large hamlets may be divided artificially to achieve more or less equal population content for the purpose of SU formation. The procedure for formation of SU is best described, perhaps, by listing sequentially the steps involved:

- (i) Identify the hamlets as described above.
- (ii) Ascertain approximate present population of each hamlet.
- (iii) Draw a notional map in Block 3 showing the approximate location of the hamlets and number them in a serpentine order starting from the northwest corner and proceeding southwards. While drawing this map, uninhabited area (non-*abadi* area) of the village will be included as part of nearby hamlet, so that no area of the village is left out. The boundaries of the hamlets may be defined with the help of some landmarks like canals, footpaths, railway lines, roads, cadastral survey plot numbers etc., so that it would be possible to identify and locate the geographical boundaries of the SUs to be formed in the village.
- (iv) List the hamlets in Block 4.1 in the order of their numbering. Indicate the present population content in terms of percentages.
- (v) Group the hamlets into D number of SUs. *The criteria* to be adopted for SU formation are *equality of population content and geographical contiguity* (numbering of hamlets is not to be adopted as a guideline for grouping). *In case there is a conflict* between the two aspects, *geographical contiguity is to be given priority*. However, difference between the population of the smallest and the largest SU formed may be kept at minimum to the extent possible. Indicate the grouping in the map.
- (vi) Number the SUs serially in column (1) of Block 4.2. The SU containing hamlet number 1 will be numbered as 1, the SU with next higher hamlet number not included in SU 1 will be numbered as 2 and so on. Indicate the numbers also in the notional map. It is quite possible that an SU may not be constituted of hamlets with consecutive serial numbers.

2.0.4 Formation of SUs in urban areas: If an UFS block has 250 or more households, it will be necessary to form SUs. Procedure for formation of SU is the same as that for the formation of SUs in the case of villages. Here the SUs are to be formed artificially by dividing the block into a certain number (say, D) of groups *by more or less equalizing the population giving priority to geographical compactness* within each SU as per the criterion specified in Chapter One. The number of SUs to be formed (i.e. the value of D) will be provided in the sample list. SUs will be numbered serially in column (1) of Block 4.2.

2.0.5 Formation of Sub-divisions of SU: After formation of SUs in the sample village/block, the selected sample SU will be identified as per the sample list. If the approximate present population of selected SU is found to be equal to or more than 1800 (900 for special cases in rural), Sub-divisions will be formed in the selected SU to control the workload of listing. The selected SU will be divided into a number of Sub-divisions (D_1) depending on the approximate population of the SU as described in Chapter One. The procedure will be similar to the formation of SU within the block as described in para 2.0.4. Each of the Sub-divisions will have more or less equal population and will be geographically compact.

2.0.6 Starting point for listing: Having determined the area unit to be surveyed, the JSO/FI will proceed to list the houses and households in this area unit. The listing may be done in the same order as that of the 2011 Census order of house listing. If the census order of house listing is not available, the listing may be started from the northwest corner of the FSU and proceeding southwards in serpentine order. While listing the households, some essential minimum particulars about the households will be collected for the purpose of formation of second stage strata.

2.0.7 Use of additional sheets of Blocks 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 5A, 5B: Whenever one schedule booklet is not adequate to list all the hamlets, SUs or Sub-divisions of selected SU (Blocks 4.1, 4.2, 4.3) or all the households (Blocks 5A and 5B) of the sample FSU, additional sheets containing the relevant block(s) shall be used and tagged firmly to the main schedule.

2.0.8 The procedures to be followed for filling up the various blocks of the Schedule 0.0 are described in the following paragraphs. Before filling in blocks, it is necessary to put tick-marks in the appropriate boxes at left hand and right hand top corners of the first page of the schedule.

Block 0: Descriptive identification of sample FSU

2.0.9 General: This block is meant for recording descriptive identification particulars of the sample FSU. State/UT, district, sub-district/ tehsil/ town name (to be tick-marked appropriately), village name, investigator unit no., block no., sample SU no. are to be copied properly from the sample list in the appropriate places. A dash (-) may be recorded against not applicable items

(e.g., item 4 i.e. village name is not applicable for urban sample and items 5 and 6 i.e. investigator unit and block are not applicable for rural sample).

2.1 Block 1: Identification of sample FSU

2.1.0 General: This block is meant for recording the identification particulars of the sample FSU in terms of codes or numbers. The particulars relating to all the items will be recorded in box spaces provided in the block against each item (except for items 2 & 3, the codes of which are already printed). For multiple cells, the rightmost cell shall be used for recording the digit of the unit place, the next left cell for the tenth place digit and so on. *Items 1, 4 to 13 and 15 shall be copied from the sample list.*

2.1.1 Item 11: FOD sub-region: The four-digit code corresponding to the FOD sub-region to which the sample FSU belongs will be recorded against item 11. *A ‘-’ will be put against this item for the state samples and also for the central samples in respect of the states of Arunachal Pradesh, Manipur, Mizoram and Tripura for which field work is carried out by the respective States.*

2.1.2 Item 12: frame code: The different types of frames used for selection of FSUs are indicated by 'frame code' available in the sample list. *Entry against item 12 shall be copied from the sample list.* The frame codes to be used are:

Rural: 2011 census – 16

Urban: 2007-12 UFS – 15, 2012-17 UFS – 17

2.1.3 Item 13: population of village/ number of households of UFS block: Census 2011 population of the village (in which the sample SU is located) or the number of households of the UFS block (in which the sample SU is located) as given in the sample list will be copied here.

2.1.4 Item 14: approximate present population: The JSO/FI will first ascertain the approximate present population of the entire village/UFS block containing the sample SU taking into consideration the normal growth of population along with any abnormal influx of population into or exodus of population from the village/UFS block. This may be ascertained mainly from the knowledgeable persons by putting certain probing questions. The starting point can be 2011 Census population. In the case of large difference with census population, it may be asked whether there has been any abnormal influx into or exodus from the village after the census or the village has been split or partly merged with other village/ urban area. If so, the approximate increase or decrease of population due to such events or any new settlements that have come up in the rural/urban area after the census is to be ascertained. **In the case of large difference between frame population and approximate present population, adequate remarks for such differences should be recorded in Block 7/ 8.**

2.1.5 Item 15: total number of SUs to be formed (D): The total number of sub-units to be formed in the village/UFS block will be given in the sample list and copied as the value of 'D' to be used in Block 4.2.

2.1.6 Item 16: approximate present population of the SU: This is to be filled only when approximate present population of the selected SU equal to more than 1800 (900 for special cases in rural areas as discussed in Chapter One). Otherwise it may kept blank.

2.1.7 Item 17: number of Sub-divisions of SU to be formed (D₁): The total number of Sub-divisions to be formed will be determined according to the criterion given in Chapter One and recorded here as the value of **D₁**. This will be recorded in the heading of block 4.3 also. This item may be filled only when item 16 is filled in.

2.1.8 Item 18: Survey code: The survey codes are:

selected FSU surveyed:	
inhabited	1
uninhabited	2
zero case	3
originally selected FSU not surveyed but substitute FSU surveyed:	
inhabited	4
uninhabited	5
zero case	6
selected FSU casualty	7

Some examples of zero cases are: FSUs comprising wholly the barracks of military and paramilitary forces (like CRPF, BSF etc.), rural areas declared as urban areas and now forming part of UFS frame used for urban sampling, FSUs wholly submerged under water in a dam or FSUs with the whole population evicted because of acquisition of land to construct a new factory or other project work etc. with no chance of habitation in future. As against this, the FSU whose entire population has shifted elsewhere due to some natural calamities like fire, cyclone etc., but is likely to return in the future, will be considered as uninhabited FSU and will be given code 2 or 5 as the case might be. If the substitute FSU cannot be surveyed, survey code will be 7. ***If a substitute FSU is surveyed (i.e. survey codes 4 – 6), the name of the village, its frame population must be mentioned in Block 7/8.***

2.1.9 Item 19: Reason for substitution of original sample (for codes 4 – 7 in item 18): In all the cases where the *originally* selected sample FSU is a casualty irrespective of whether it has been substituted and subsequently surveyed or not surveyed (i.e. for codes 4 to 7 against item 18), the reason for its becoming a casualty will be recorded in terms of code against item 19. The codes are:

Original sample FSU:

not identifiable/ traceable.....	1
not accessible.....	2
restricted area (not permitted to survey)	3
others (specify).....	9

A ‘-’ may be put against this item if the entry against item 18 is 1 or 2 or 3. *Cases of FSUs comprising wholly the barracks of military and paramilitary forces will not be considered as restricted area for providing code 3 against item 19. As stated earlier, such cases will be considered as surveyed and will be treated as zero cases.*

2.2 Block 2: Particulars of field operations: The details of field operations will be recorded in this block. In the serial number 1(a) and 1(b), names of the Junior Statistical Officer (JSO)/ Field Investigator (FI)/ Senior Statistical Officer (SSO)/ Field Officer (FO), codes (permanent employee code in case of regular employees and temporary codes, if available, for other staff) and signatures will be recorded. All other items are self-explanatory.

For recording the entry in column (3) and (4) corresponding to serial number 2 (i) and (ii), following procedure may be adopted. For entering date of commencement of survey/ inspection the date when commencement of identification of FSU was started will be recorded. But while entering date of completion of survey/inspection, the date when completion of listing and selection of households was done will be recorded. However, the minor part relating to columns (7) to (10) of Block 6 may be ignored.

2.3 Block 3: Sketch map for sub-units (SU) formation

2.3.0 For villages/UFS blocks requiring SU formation, the space provided in the block shall be used to draw a free hand sketch-map of the village/UFS block showing the boundaries of the hamlets and SUs formed so that they may be identifiable in the field afterwards with the help of this map. It need not be drawn to scale. For villages, the serial numbers of the hamlets as given in column (1) of Block 4.1 will be written down on the map against each hamlet. The SU number given in column (1) of Block 4.2 to which the hamlet belongs will also be shown against each hamlet within brackets on the right side of the hamlet number. For urban areas also, the SUs will be numbered in the map. The area for the selected SU shall be shaded in the map.

2.4 Block 3.1: sketch map of Sub-division formation

2.4.0 For SU requiring formation of Sub-divisions, a freehand sketch map of the SU showing the boundaries of the Sub-divisions will be shown in the map. The number of Sub-division will be marked against each Sub-division corresponding to the number in column (1) of block 4.3. The area of selected Sub-division will be shaded in the map.

2.5 Block 4.1: List of hamlets (only for rural samples with SU formation)

2.5.0 This block is to be filled in only for the villages requiring formation of SU (i.e. for $D > 1$). All the hamlets located in the village will be listed in the specified order.

2.5.1 **Columns (1) to (3):** A running serial number for the hamlets will be given in column (1). Name of the hamlets will be written in column (2). Present population of each hamlet expressed as percentage of the total village population will be given in column (3) in whole numbers. Entries in column (3) should add up to 100.

2.6 Block 4.2: List of sub-units (SU) and identification of selected SU

2.6.0 **General:** This block is meant for recording the details of formation of SUs and their selection (i.e. with $D > 1$). Reference may be made to paragraphs 2.0.3, 2.0.3.1 and 2.0.4 for the procedures of formation and numbering of SUs.

2.6.1 **Column (1): serial no. of SU:** The SUs formed will be given a running serial number (starting from 1) in column (1) as per the guidelines given in paragraphs 2.0.3, 2.0.3.1 and 2.0.4. The last serial number in this column will be the value of 'D' which is mentioned in the sample list and copied in item 15, block 1 and also against 'D' below the block heading of 4.2.

2.6.2 **Column (2): serial no. of hamlet(s) in the SU (rural only):** This column is to be filled up only for rural FSUs. The serial numbers of the hamlets recorded in column (1) of Block 4.1 constituting each SU are to be recorded in column (2) separated by commas.

2.6.3 **Column (3): percentage (%) of population in the SU:** Approximate present population of the SU in terms of percentage to total village/UFS block population will be recorded in column (3) in whole number. Entries in this column should always add up to 100.

2.6.4 **Column (4): selected SU:** '1' will be recorded against the selected SU (as given in item 7 of Block 0) in this column. *The selected SU number corresponding to entry '1' in column (4) needs to be encircled in column (1).*

2.7 Block 4.3: List of Sub-divisions of selected SU with population equal to or more than 1800 (900 for special cases) and identification of selected Sub-division

2.7.0 **General:** This block is meant for recording the details of formation of Sub-divisions and their selection within the selected SU. Reference may be made to paragraph 2.0.5 for the procedures of formation of Sub-divisions. The criterion of formation of Sub-division is described in paragraph 1.4.13 and 1.4.13.1 of Chapter One. D_1 number of Sub-divisions will be formed.

2.7.1 **Column (1): serial no. of Sub-divisions:** The Sub-divisions formed will be given a running serial number (starting from 1) in column (1). The numbering of the Sub-divisions will

be same as in case SUs in villages/UFS blocks. The last serial number in this column will be the value of 'D₁' which is to be recorded against 'D₁' below the block heading of 4.3.

2.7.2 Column (2): percentage (%) of population in the Sub-divisions: Approximate present population of the Sub-divisions in terms of percentage to selected SU population will be recorded in column (2) in whole number. Entries in this column should always add up to 100.

2.7.3 Column (3): selected Sub-division: '1' will be recorded against the selected Sub-division in this column. *The selected Sub-divisions number corresponding to entry '1' in column (3) needs to be encircled in column (1).*

2.8 Block 5A: list of households and structures in the SU/Sub-division of SU and record of selection of households for Schedules 21.1

2.8.0.1 In this block, various information are to be recorded for selected SU/Sub-divisions of SU.

2.8.0.2 Listing of all the houses and households along with collection of a few particulars for identification, preparation of sampling frame for Schedule 21.1 and 5.1 and formation of second stage strata for Schedule 21.1 are to be carried out in this block.

2.8.0.3 It is essential to ensure that there is no omission or duplication of any house or household. A house to house enquiry will be made to list all the houses and households. *Households, which are found to be locked at the time of listing (including such households which are absent in the present place for a period of less than six months during last one year) are also to be listed and included in the frame of households before sample selection.* After obtaining from the neighbours as much details as possible about the absentee households, attempt should be made to contact the households at the appropriate hours (even outside the normal working hours of the JSO/FI) and if required, by revisiting the households during the survey period in the sample FSU. While listing a house the JSO/FI shall find out how many households (including locked households) reside there and list all of them. After this, the JSO/FI will proceed to list the next house. In order to ensure complete listing of houses/ households, it is better to follow some definite order for listing. The order followed in 2011 Population Census may be adopted, wherever possible, taking care that any house that has come up later is not omitted; otherwise, listing may be done in serpentine manner starting from the north-west corner and moving southwards. The names of any natural grouping of the houses like hamlet, street, mohalla, etc. and date of listing may be written at the top before the listing of houses starts. This will help in checking completeness.

Various columns of Block 5A are described below:

2.8.1 Column (0): serial number of row: The serial numbers of rows are printed in column (0) of Block 5A, for each page of the block. This is to facilitate transfer some entries from block 5A to block 5B.

2.8.2 Column (1): house number: All houses including vacant ones shall be listed by giving a house number. The 2011 Population Census house number or the number given by the local panchayat, municipality or other local bodies, may be used if available. The houses without such numbers will be given a separate running serial number starting from 1 within brackets. Wherever house numbers are available, even if not for all the houses, the actual house numbers shall be recorded without any bracket. After listing all the households associated with a house, the next house shall be listed. If the house is used solely for non-residential purposes or is vacant, the purpose to which it is put will be written across the line, e.g. temple, vacant structure, etc. For family living under a tree or bridge etc. (i.e. without any house), a ‘-’ may be put in this column.

2.8.3 Column (2): household serial number: The household(s) normally residing in the house or in a fixed location (e.g. under a tree/ bridge/ open space etc.) listed in column (1) will be numbered in column (2). All households (including those found temporarily absent) will be given a running serial number in this column starting from 1. In case of persons staying in, say, hostels and forming single member households, each of them will be listed in separate lines giving a household serial number. Continuous serial number starting from 1 will be given in column (2) for the households in the FSU. This column will be left blank for the lines meant for vacant houses, non-residential buildings, etc.

2.8.4 Column (3): name of head of the household: For a household having serial number in column (2), the name of head of the household shall be recorded here.

2.8.5 Column (4): household size: The size of each household will be recorded in this column. Two small box spaces are provided against this column at the end of each page to record the current page total for this column and the cumulative total for the pages.

2.8.6 Column (5): household size code (codes 1 – 2): The size of each of households is recorded in column 4. If entry in column 4 is equal to or more than 7 then code 1 will be entered. Otherwise code 2 will be recorded. For locked households, code 2 may be given in column (5).

2.8.7 Column (6): usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household’s (UMPCE) (Rs.): Household’s usual monthly consumer expenditure has been explained in para 1.5.5 of Chapter One. The usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household may be recorded in this column in whole number of rupees.

For locked household, a ‘-’ may be recorded in this column.

2.8.8 Column (7): UMPCE (Rs.): Usual monthly per capita consumer expenditure of the household will be recorded in this column in rupees in whole numbers. The figure will be derived by dividing household’s usual monthly consumer expenditure (column 6) by the household size (column 4) and rounding it off to the nearest whole number.

For locked household, a ‘ – ’ may be recorded in this column.

2.8.9 Column (8): UMPCE code: Cut-off point ‘A’ (in Rs.) has been determined from Domestic Tourism (Schedule 21.1) data of NSS 72nd round (with proper adjustments using price indices) for **each NSS region** for both rural and urban areas in such a way that top 40% of the population have monthly per capita expenditure (UMPCE) more than ‘A’. The values of ‘A’ are given as follows:

Table 1: The values of cut-off point A (UMPCE in Rs.) for each NSS region				
State/UT	NSS Region	description	cut-off values	
			rural	urban
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
Andhra Pradesh	281	Coastal Northern	2110	3700
	282	Coastal Southern	2220	3530
	283	Inland Southern	1730	2570
Arunachal Pradesh	121	Arunachal Pradesh	1850	2550
Assam	181	Plains Eastern	1730	2470
	182	Plains Western	1850	3700
	183	Cachar Plain	1540	2060
	184	Central Brahmaputra Plains	1730	2160
Bihar	101	Northern	1480	1850
	102	Central	1450	1970
Chhattisgarh	221	Northern Chhattisgarh	1050	2060
	222	Mahanadi Basin	1230	1970
	223	Southern Chhattisgarh	850	2310
Goa	301	Goa	3080	3700
Gujarat	241	South Eastern	2220	4320
	242	Plains Northern	2310	3920
	243	Dry areas	1760	2470
	244	Kachchh	1970	3880
	245	Saurashtra	2470	3270
Haryana	061	Eastern	2470	3700
	062	Western	2310	3080
Himachal Pradesh	021	Central	2470	3700
	022	Trans Himalayan & Southern	2160	4110
Jammu & Kashmir	011	Mountainous	2640	3700
	012	Outer Hills	2050	2470
	013	Jhelam Valley	1850	2740

Table 1: The values of cut-off point A (UMPCE in Rs.) for each NSS region

State/UT	NSS Region	description	cut-off values	
			rural	urban
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
Jharkhand	201	Ranchi Plateau	1430	2740
	202	Hazaribagh Plateau	1480	2060
Karnataka	291	Coastal & Ghats	2100	3290
	292	Inland Eastern	1850	2100
	293	Inland Southern	1850	4620
	294	Inland Northern	1700	2100
Kerala	321	Northern	2400	2630
	322	Southern	3170	3820
Madhya Pradesh	231	Vindhya	1600	1850
	232	Central	1500	2180
	233	Malwa	1580	2470
	234	South	1150	2470
	235	South Western	1450	2240
	236	Northern	1760	2110
Maharashtra	271	Coastal	1850	4480
	272	Inland Western	2210	3210
	273	Inland Northern	1850	2770
	274	Inland Central	2000	2880
	275	Inland Eastern	1390	2730
	276	Eastern	1230	2820
Manipur	141	Plains	1850	1970
	142	Hills	1440	1440
Meghalaya	171	Meghalaya	2280	3550
Mizoram	151	Mizoram	2470	3700
Nagaland	131	Nagaland	2540	3080
Odisha	211	Coastal	1480	2470
	212	Southern	1180	2470
	213	Northern	1180	2100
Punjab	031	Northern	2820	3700
	032	Southern	3080	3700
Rajasthan	081	Western	1850	2880
	082	North-Eastern	2050	3210

Table 1: The values of cut-off point A (UMPCE in Rs.) for each NSS region

State/UT	NSS Region	description	cut-off values	
			rural	urban
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
	083	Southern	1230	3700
	084	South Eastern	1730	2470
	085	Northern	2190	2640
Sikkim	111	Sikkim	2260	4010
Tamil Nadu	331	Coastal Northern	2030	3700
	332	Coastal	1780	3120
	333	Southern	2470	3270
	334	Inland	2340	3390
Telangana	361	Inland North Western	2190	4200
	362	Inland North Eastern	2100	3130
Tripura	161	Tripura	2050	3080
Uttar Pradesh	091	Northern Upper Ganga Plains	1750	2470
	092	Central	1440	2260
	093	Eastern	1480	2190
	094	Southern	1480	1970
	095	Southern Upper Ganga Plains	1600	1960
Uttarakhand	051	Uttarakhand	2050	2960
West Bengal	191	Himalayan	1540	3450
	192	Eastern Plains	1540	2060
	193	Southern Plains	1970	3290
	194	Central Plains	1730	2470
	195	Western Plains	1750	2220
A & N Islands	351	A & N Islands	3080	4620
Chandigarh	041	Chandigarh	3940	4930
Delhi	071	Delhi	3940	4110
Dadra & N. Haveli	261	Dadra and Nagar Haveli	2020	4160
Daman & Diu	251	Daman & Diu	2770	4270
Ladakh	371	Ladakh	2880	3080
Lakshadweep	311	Lakshadweep	2310	2770
Puducherry	341	Puducherry	3730	4140

For entry in column (8), UMPCE of the households in column (7) may be compared with the values of 'A'. The households with UMPCE > 'A' will be given code 1 in column (8). Otherwise, code '2' will be recorded in column (8).

For locked households, code 2 may be given in column (8).

2.8.10 Column (9): any household member completed any overnight trip during last 365 days for medical or holidaying or shopping purpose? (yes – 1, no – 2): From each household, first it will be ascertained if any household member has completed any domestic overnight trip during the last 365 days for medical or holidaying or shopping purpose. Chapter One may be referred to for definition of 'trip' and different types of trips. If the reply is in the affirmative, code 1 will be given in this column, otherwise code 2 will be recorded.

2.8.11 Column (10): for 2 in col. (9), any household member completed any other overnight trip during last 30 days ? (yes – 1, no – 2): For the households with code '2' in column (9), it will be enquired if any household member has completed any other domestic overnight trip during last 30 days for any purpose (except for medical, holidaying and shopping). If such a member is found, code 1 will be recorded in this column, else code 2.

For the households with code '1' in column (9), put a '-' mark in column (10). For locked households, efforts must be made to get the information from the neighbours. If no such information is available even from the neighbours, code 2 may be given in both the columns (9) and (10).

2.8.12 Column (11): whether the household constructed/purchased any new house/ flat for residential purpose after 31st March, 2014 (yes - 1, no - 2): From each household, first it will be ascertained if any household member has constructed/purchased any new house/ flat for residential purpose after 31st March, 2014. If the reply is in the affirmative, code 1 will be given in this column, otherwise code 2 will be recorded.

2.8.13 Columns (12) – (22): These columns are relevant to **Schedule 21.1 – Survey on Domestic Tourism Expenditure.**

2.8.13.1 Column (12): SSS no. for Schedule 21.1 – The SSS formation for Schedule 21.1 will be based on the entries in columns (8), (9) and (10) of Block 5A for both rural and urban samples. The following table needs to be followed while allotting SSS no. to a particular household.

Block 5A			
Entry in col. (8)	Entry in col. (9)	Entry in col. (10)	SSS no. in col. (12)
1	1	-	1
2	1	-	2
1	2	1	3
2	2	1	4
1/2	2	2	5

2.8.13.2 Columns (13) – (17): Schedule 21.1 – sampling serial number for SSS 1/ SSS 2/ SSS 3/ SSS 4/ SSS 5: For Schedule 21.1, there will be five Second Stage Strata (SSS). Columns (13) to (17) will provide the sampling frame of households for SSS 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 respectively. Each household will be tick-marked (\surd) in one and only one of these columns.

The households with code 1 in column (12) will be tick-marked in column (13). The households with codes 2, 3, 4 and 5 in column (12) will be tick-marked in columns (14), (15), (16) and (17) respectively.

Then all the tick-marks will be given a running serial number from the top starting with 1 in each column independently. Columns (13), (14), (15), (16) and (17) will provide the sampling serial numbers for SSS1, SSS2, SSS3, SSS4 and SSS5 respectively.

The highest serial numbers in each of these columns will be the value of 'H' for the respective SSS for the schedule. This value will be recorded against 'H' in the space provided in the column headings.

2.8.13.3 Columns (18) – (22): Schedule 21.1 – sample household number for SSS 1/ SSS 2/ SSS 3/ SSS 4/ SSS 5: The number of households to be selected from each SSS is given under sample design in Chapter One. However, it may be necessary to modify this number if there is a shortfall in any of the SSS. The final number of sample households, after compensation, will be the value of 'h' for respective SSS. These values will be recorded against 'h' in the space provided in the column headings.

Sample households are to be selected by SRSWOR for each SSS. For selecting the sample households of any particular SSS by SRSWOR, the following procedure will be followed: Suppose 'H' denotes the total number of households in the frame of SSS 1 [i.e. the highest entry in column (13) of Block 5A] and 'h' the number of households to be selected. If $H = h$, all the households will be selected and no random number needs to be drawn. If $H > h$, first draw a random number, say R_1 , between 1 and H. Next, draw another random number, say, R_2 , also between 1 and H. If $R_2 = R_1$, then reject R_2 and draw a fresh R_2 . Continue this way till requisite number of distinct R's [i.e. R_1, R_2, \dots, R_h] have been drawn. Then the households with sampling serial numbers R_1, R_2, \dots, R_h in column (13) will be the selected households and be

given sample household numbers as 1, 2, , h in column (18). Similarly, households will be selected for SSS 2, 3, 4 and 5 by using sampling serial numbers of columns (14), (15), (16) and (17) and sample household numbers will be given in columns (19), (20), (21) and (22) respectively. Encircle the sampling serial numbers in columns (13)/ (14)/ (15)/ (16)/ (17) for the selected households.

2.9 Block 5B: Record of selection of households for Schedule 5.1

2.9.1 In this block, some information will be copied from Block 5A. Formation of SSS and record of selection of households will be done for Schedule 5.1. For the columns of Block 5B entries may be copied only for those households which have running serial numbers in column (2) of Block 5A.

Various columns of Block 5B are described below:

2.9.2 **Columns (0), (2), (5), (8) and (11):** Entries for these columns will be copied from the columns (0), (2), (5), (8) and (11) of Block 5A for every page. Copying may be started from first household serial number in the relevant page of Block 5A and continuing without omission or duplication in the corresponding page of Block 5B. Care must be taken to copy the entries correctly.

2.9.3 **Column (23): SSS number for Schedule 5.1:** The SSS formation for Schedule 5.1 will be based on the entries in columns (5), (8) and (11) of Block 5A. The following table needs to be followed while allotting SSS no. to a particular household.

Block 5B			
Entry in col. (5)	Entry in col. (8)	Entry in col. (11)	SSS no. in col. (23)
1	1/2	1/2	1
2	1	1	2
2	2	1	3
2	1	2	4
2	2	2	5

2.9.4 **Columns (24) – (33):** These columns are relevant to **Schedule 5.1 – Survey on MIS.**

2.9.4.1 **Columns (24) – (28): Schedule 5.1 – sampling serial number for Schedule 5.1:** For Schedule 5.1, there will be five Second Stage Strata (SSS). Columns (24) to (28) will provide the

sampling frame of households for SSS 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 respectively. Each household will be tick-marked (√) in one and only one of these columns.

The households with code 1 in column (23) will be tick-marked in column (24). The households with codes 2, 3, 4 and 5 in column (23) will be tick-marked in columns (25), (26), (27) and (28) respectively.

Then all the tick-marks will be given a running serial number from the top starting with 1 in each column independently. Columns (24), (25), (26), (27) and (28) will provide the sampling serial numbers for SSS1, SSS2, SSS3, SSS4 and SSS5 respectively.

The highest serial numbers in each of these columns will be the value of 'H' for the respective SSS for the schedule. This value will be recorded against 'H' in the space provided in the column headings.

2.9.4.2 Columns (29) – (33): Schedule 5.1 – sample household number for Schedule 5.1: The number of households to be selected from each SSS is given under sample design in Chapter One. However, it may be necessary to modify this number if there is a shortfall in any of the SSS. The final number of sample households, after compensation, will be the value of 'h' for respective SSS. These values will be recorded against 'h' in the space provided in the column headings. The sample households may be selected thereafter from each SSS by SRSWOR following the similar procedure described in para 2.8.13.3. If the sample household is found to have been already selected for Schedule 21.1, it will be *replaced* by the next non-selected household in the frame. The household selected after replacement will be treated as an originally selected household. The sampling serial number of this household will be encircled twice. However, if the number of households in any SSS is inadequate and *replacement* is not possible, one or more sample households may be selected for both the schedules in that SSS. In such cases both schedules will be canvassed in the same household.

2.10 Shortfall and compensation for Schedules 21.1 and 5.1: Allocation of sample households for each SSS has been discussed in Chapter One. However, there may be situation where number of households in the frame of an SSS is less than the required allocation leading to a shortfall.

For Schedule 21.1 and 5.1, procedure of compensation may be implemented by following the steps described below.

step 1: Allocate the required number of households to each SSS wherever possible and identify the SSS having shortfall.

step 2: Find the SSS where additional households are available following the priority order given as follows and compensate.

SSS having shortfall		priority order of SSS for compensation
Schedules 21.1		
Overnight trips during 365 days	1	2, 3, 4, 5
	2	1, 4, 3, 5
Overnight trips during 30 days	3	4, 1, 2, 5
	4	3, 2, 1, 5
remaining	5	1, 2, 3, 4

SSS having shortfall		priority order of SSS for compensation
Schedules 5.1		
large hh	1	2, 3, 4, 5
construction/ purchase of new house	2	3, 4, 5, 1
	3	2, 5, 4, 1
UMPCE > A	4	5, 2, 3, 1
UMPCE <= A	5	4, 3, 2, 1

Find the SSS where additional households are available as per the above priority order of SSS and compensate. The step may be repeated for **all** SSS having shortfall after step 1.

The resulting number of households (h) for each SSS will be entered at the top of relevant column(s) of Blocks 5B and also in column (5) against the relevant SSS number of Block 6 of Schedule 0.0.

Example 1: Compensation of shortfall for Schedule 21.1

SSS	no. of households to be surveyed	H	Step 1	Step 2	h
1	2	12	2	1+1	4
2	2	32	2		2
3	2	4	2	1	3
4	2	1	1*(1)	C (SSS 3)	1
5	2	0	0*(2)	C (SSS 1, SSS1)	0
<i>total</i>	<i>10</i>	49	7	3	10
shortfall			3	0	×

* indicates the SSS having shortfall (the number of shortfall);

C – indicates compensation made (SSS from which compensation is made)

Example 2: Compensation of shortfall for Schedule 5.1

SSS	no. of households to be surveyed	H	Step 1	Step 2	h
1	2	3	2		2
2	2	1	1*(1)	C (SSS 5)	1
3	2	0	0*(2)	C (SSS 5, SSS 5)	0
4	6	5	5*(1)	C (SSS 5)	5
5	8	65	8	1 + 1 + 1 + 1	12
<i>total</i>	20	74	16	4	20
shortfall			4	0	×

* indicates the SSS having shortfall (the number of shortfall);

C – indicates compensation made (SSS from which compensation is made)

2.11 Block 6: particulars of sampling of households

2.11.0 Particulars of sampling of households will be recorded in this block for selected FSU for different schedules.

2.11.1 **Column (2): population:** Population as obtained by summing up the page totals of household sizes in column (4) of Block 5A over all the listed households may be recorded in this column against Schedule 21.1 for both rural and urban samples.

2.11.2 **Columns (4) – (10): number of households:** Total number of households listed in the frame of each SSS for both schedule 21.1 and 5.1 will be recorded in the corresponding cells of column (4). Number of selected households will be copied in column (5) for Schedules 21.1 and 5.1 from the relevant columns of Blocks of 5A and 5B.

Columns (6), (7) and (9) of Block 6 may be filled up on the basis of survey codes given, Block 1 of both Schedules 21.1 and 5.1. The entries in columns (6), (7) & (9) will be the number of filled-in schedules with the survey codes 1, 2 & 3 for respective schedule and SSS. Total number households surveyed will be entered in column (8). It may be seen that -

(i) column (8) = column (6) + column (7) and (ii) column (9) = column (5) - column (8).

Entry against 'all (9)' will be sum of entries in SSS 1 – 5 for Schedule 21.1 and sum of entries in SSS 1 – 5 for Schedule 5.1.

2.11.3 **Column (10): number of households replaced:** Total number of households replaced for Schedule 5.1 (being already selected for Schedule 21.1) will be reported against the rows for Schedule 5.1. Entries will be the number of double circles in columns (29) to (33) of Block 5B. Entry against 'all (9)' will be sum of entries of all SSS of Schedule 21.1.

2.12 **Block 7: remarks by investigators (JSO/FI):** The Junior Statistical Officer (JSO)/ Field Investigator (FI) may give remarks here on any abnormal situation or entry in the schedule.

2.13 Block 8: comments by supervisory officer(s): The supervising officer inspecting the work relating to this schedule may give comments here.

2.14 Substitution of sample households: If a sample household of a particular schedule cannot be surveyed due to some reason or the other, it will be substituted by the next non-selected household, i.e. the one which has not already been selected for any other schedule, having higher sampling serial number of the same SSS. The substitute for the one having last sampling serial number of an SSS will be the one having smallest sampling serial number within the same SSS. If the substituted household becomes a casualty, it will be substituted by another in the same manner. If this household also turns out to be a casualty, further substitute need not be taken. Substitution may be attempted more than twice in a few cases to prevent occurrence of void SSS. In such cases, the fact has to be recorded in the remarks block (Blocks 7 & 8).

It is to be noted that in the case of a substitution of a household, the word “SUBSTITUTED” should be written at the top of the front page of schedule.

2.15 Random numbers: A table of random numbers is supplied to each field officials. The n^{th} column of the table will be consulted in the case of the central sample and $(n + 1)^{\text{th}}$ column in the case of the state sample, where n is the last two digits of the serial number of the sample FSU. When $n = 00$, it will be taken as 100. The number of digits to be used will be the same as that of the highest number of the range within which the random number is to be selected. However, if random number is required to be drawn between 1 and 10 or between 1 and 100, only one or two digit random numbers may be used, as the cases may be, where random number ‘0’ will stand for ‘10’ and random number ‘00’ for ‘100’.

The random numbers may be used in the order: – (i) selection of Sub-division whenever required, (ii) households for five SSS for Schedule 21.1 and (iii) households for five SSS for Schedule 5.1. If the particular column of random numbers is exhausted in the process, next column may be used. Similarly, if all the columns of the random number table are exhausted, then the first column will be used.

2.16 Substitution of sample FSU:

(a) If a sample FSU cannot be surveyed due to say, it being not uniquely identifiable or traceable, not accessible or for any other reason, it will be substituted. All such cases will be referred to:

The Deputy Director General (TC), DQAD, NSO
Mahalanobis Bhawan,
164, Gopal Lal Tagore Road, Kolkata- 700108.
e-mail address: tc.dpd@mospi.gov.in
fax: 033-25771025

A copy of the letter may be given to:

The Deputy Director General (Co-ordination), SDRD, NSO
Mahalanobis Bhawan,
164, Gopal Lal Tagore Road, Kolkata- 700108.
e-mail address: tc.sdrd-mospi@gov.in
fax: 033-25776439

If the substituted FSU has same problem as the original, correspondences may be made immediately so that another substitute can be provided to prevent stratum/sub-stratum from being void. In case no substitute FSU could be surveyed even with best efforts [i.e. code 7 in item 18, Block 1], a blank Schedule 0.0 will be submitted with only Blocks 0, 1, 2, 7 and 8 filled in. The word 'CASUALTY' is to be written at the top of the front page of the schedule in such cases.

All efforts must be made to ensure that at least one FSU is always surveyed from each stratum/ sub-stratum so as to prevent occurrences of void strata.

(b) If a sample FSU is found to be depopulated at the time of survey, or its population has shifted elsewhere due to some natural calamity, or it is treated as a "zero-case", it will not be substituted. It will be treated as a valid sample and blank Schedule 0.0 with only Blocks 0, 1, 2, 7 and 8 filled in will be submitted in such cases. The word 'UNINHABITED' or 'ZERO CASE', as appropriate will be written on the top of the front page of the schedule in such cases. However, in Arunachal Pradesh and possibly elsewhere also in the hill tracts of North Eastern States where, for example, jhum cultivation is prevalent, whole village may shift from place to place. In such cases the sample village will be surveyed in the place where it is currently located and not treated as uninhabited if found absent in its original location.

(c) If a village in which the sample FSU is situated is found to have been declared as urban (as a town by itself or as merged in another town) either by State Govt. notification or by census authorities after Census 2011 and if it is covered in the urban frame used for selection of FSUs, it will be treated as a zero case and the procedure given in the previous para will be followed in this case. However, if it is not included in the urban frame, it is to be surveyed as per the rural programme. If the boundaries of the original village are not identifiable, it may be substituted. If only a part of the village has been merged in the town, the remaining part will be surveyed as per rural programme even in this situation. *It is suggested* to write to SDRD before treating any sample as a zero case.

(d) *It is important* to note that a listing schedule has to be submitted for every sample FSU irrespective of whether it is surveyed/ substituted (including uninhabited and zero cases) or a casualty.

2.17 Selection of more than one SU from same village/UFS block: If more than one SU belonging to a particular village/UFS block is selected as sample, each of them will be treated as an independent sample.

2.17.1 If more than one SU is selected from same village/UFS block *in same sub-round*, formation of SUs may be done when listing schedule for the first of the sample FSUs of the village/UFS block is filled-in. That is, *Blocks 3, 4.1, 4.2 and 4.3 may be filled-in for the first instance and when any other SU is selected from the same village/UFS block, information may be copied from Blocks 3, 4.1, 4.2 and 4.3 of the previously filled-in listing schedule.*

2.17.2 If, however, the SUs are canvassed in different sub-rounds, they are to be surveyed just like a new sample with fresh SU formation, listing and sample selection.

An illustration for filling up various columns of Block 5A and 5 B																											
[5A] list of households and structures and record of selection of households for Schedule 21.1																											
serial number of row	house number	household serial number	name of head of the household	household (hh) size	household (hh) size code (1-2)	usual monthly consumer expenditure of the hh (Rs)	UMPCE (Rs) (col. 6 ÷ col. 4)	UMPCE code (1-2)	any hh member completed overnight trip during last 365 days for medical/holidaying/shopping purpose? (yes-1, no-2)	for 2 in col. (9), hh member completed any other overnight trip during last 30 days? (yes-1, no-2)	whether the hh constructed/purchased any new house/flat for residential purpose after 31st March, 2014 (yes=1, no=2)	schedule 21.1										SSS formation for Schedule 21.1					
												SSS number	sampling serial number					sample household number									
													1 in col. 12	2 in col. 12	3 in col. 12	4 in col. 12	5 in col. 12	SSS						SSS			
													1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5	entry in col.8, col.9, col.10		SSS no. (col.12)		
(0)	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)	(12)	(13)	(14)	(15)	(16)	(17)	(18)	(19)	(20)	(21)	(22)					
1	51	1		5	2			1	2	1	2	3			(√1)					1				col.8=1 col.9=1	1		
2	52	2		8	1			2	1	-	2	2		√1										col.8=2 col.9=1	2		
3	53/1	3		4	2			1	1	-	2	1	(√1)					2						col.8=2 col.9=1	2		
4		-	Temple																								
5	54	4		3	2			2	2	2	1	5					√1							col.8=1 col.9=2 col.10=1	3		
6	54	5		2	2			1	2	2	2	5					√2							col.8=2 col.9=2 col.10=1	4		
7	54	6		3	2			2	2	1	2	4				√1								col.8=2 col.9=2 col.10=1	4		
8	(1)	7		2	2			1	2	2	2	5					√3							col.8=1/2 col.9=2 col.10=1	5		
9	55/1	8		5	2			2	1	-	2	2		√2										col.8=1/2 col.9=2 col.10=2	5		
10	55/2	9		5	2			2	2	1	1	4				√2								col.8=1/2 col.9=2 col.10=2	5		
page total				37																							
cumulative page total				37																							

col.5: hh size code: col.4 > 7 → 1, col.4 ≤ 7 → 2

col.8: UMPCE code: UMPCE > A → 1, UMPCE ≤ A → 2

[5B] record of selection of households for Schedule 5.1 (MIS)																		
transfer entries from cols. of block 5A					SSS number	schedule 5.1											SSS formation for schedule 5.1	
col.0	col.2	col.5	col.8	col.11		sampling serial number					sample household number							
						1 in col. 23	2 in col. 23	3 in col. 23	4 in col. 23	5 in col. 23								
serial number of row	hh serial number	hh size code	MPCE code	constructed /purchased any new house/ flat		SSS					SSS					entry in col.5, col. 8, col.11	SSS no. (col.23)	
					1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5				
					H=3	H=3	H=6	H=10	H=15	h=2	h=2	h=2	h=6	h=8				
(0)	(2)	(5)	(8)	(11)	(23)	(24)	(25)	(26)	(27)	(28)	(29)	(30)	(31)	(32)	(33)			
1	1	2	1	2	4				√1								col.5=1 col. 8=1/2 col.11=1/2	1
2	2	1	2	2	1	(√1)					1							
3	3	2	1	2	4				√2								col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=1	2
4																		
5	4	2	2	1	3			√1										
6	5	2	1	2	4				(√3)				1				col.5=2 col. 8=2 col.11=1	3
7	6	2	2	2	5					(√1)				3				
8	7	2	1	2	4				(√4)				3				col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=2	4
9	8	2	2	2	5					(√2)					5			
10	9	2	2	1	3			(√2)					1				col.5=2 col. 8=2 col.11=2	5

[5A] list of households and structures and record of selection of households for Schedule 21.1																										
serial number of row	house number	household serial number	name of head of the household	household (hh) size	household (hh) size code (1 – 2)	usual monthly consumer expenditure of the hh (Rs)	UMPCE (Rs) (col. 6 ÷ col. 4)	UMPCE code (1 – 2)	any hh member completed overnight trip during last 365 days for medical/ holidaying/ shopping purpose? (yes-1, no-2)	for 2 in col. (9), hh member completed any other overnight trip during last 30 days? (yes-1, no-2)	whether the hh constructed /purchased any new house/ flat for residential purpose after 31st March, 2014 (yes=1, no=2)	schedule 21.1										SSS formation for Schedule 21.1				
												sampling serial number					sample household number									
												1 in col. 12	2 in col. 12	3 in col. 12	4 in col. 12	5 in col. 12	SSS							SSS		
												1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5	entry in col.8, col. 9, col.10	SSS no. (col.12)			
(0)	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)	(12)	(13)	(14)	(15)	(16)	(17)	(18)	(19)	(20)	(21)	(22)				
1	55/3	10		4	2			2	1	-	2	2		(√3)					2					col.8=1 col.9=1	1	
2		-	Shop																							
3	56	11		2	2			2	2	1	2	4			√3									col.8=2 col.9=1	2	
4	57	12		1	2			1	2	1	2	3			√2											
5	58	13		1	2			2	2	2	1	5					(√4)				1			col.8=1 col.9=2 col.10=1	3	
6	59/1	14		2	2			1	2	1	2	3			√3											
7	59/2	15		2	2			1	1	-	1	1	√2											col.8=2 col.9=2 col.10=1	4	
8	59/3	16		2	2			2	1	-	2	2			√4											
9	(2)	17		3	2			2	2	2	2	5					√5							col.8=1/2 col.9=2 col.10=2	5	
10	(3)	18		5	2			2	1	-	2	2			√5											
page total				22																						
cumulative page total				59																						

col.5: hh size code: col.4 > 7 → 1, col.4 ≤ 7 → 2

col.8: UMPCE code: UMPCE > A → 1, UMPCE ≤ A → 2

[5B] record of selection of households for Schedule 5.1 (MIS)																		
transfer entries from cols. of block 5A					SSS number	schedule 5.1											SSS formation for schedule 5.1	
col.0	col.2	col.5	col.8	col.11		sampling serial number					sample household number							
						1 in col. 23	2 in col. 23	3 in col. 23	4 in col. 23	5 in col. 23								
serial number of row	hh serial number	hh size code	MPCE code	constructed /purchased any new house/ flat		SSS					SSS					entry in col.5, col. 8, col.11	SSS no. (col.23)	
					1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5				
					H=	H=	H=	H=	H=	h=	h=	h=	h=	h=				
(0)	(2)	(5)	(8)	(11)	(23)	(24)	(25)	(26)	(27)	(28)	(29)	(30)	(31)	(32)	(33)			
1	10	2	2	2	5					√3						col.5=1 col. 8=1/2 col.11=1/2	1	
2																		
3	11	2	2	2	5					√4						col.5=2	2	
4	12	2	1	2	4				(√5)				2			col. 8=1 col.11=1		
5	13	2	2	1	3			√3										
6	14	2	1	2	4				(√6)				6			col.5=2 col. 8=2 col.11=1	3	
7	15	2	1	1	2		(√1)					2				col.5=2 col.11=1		
8	16	2	2	2	5					(√5)				1		col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=2	4	
9	17	2	2	2	5					(√6)				8				
10	18	2	2	2	5					√7						col.5=2 col. 8=2 col.11=2	5	

[5A] list of households and structures and record of selection of households for Schedule 21.1																									
serial number of row	house number	household serial number	name of head of the household	household (hh) size	household (hh) size code (1 - 2)	usual monthly consumer expenditure of the hh (Rs)	UMPCE (Rs) (col. 6 ÷ col. 4)	UMPCE code (1 - 2)	any hh member completed overnight trip during last 365 days for medical/ holidaying/ shopping purpose? (yes-1, no-2)	for 2 in col. (9), hh member completed any other overnight trip during last 30 days? (yes-1, no-2)	whether the hh constructed /purchased any new house/ flat for residential purpose after 31st March, 2014 (yes=1, no=2)	schedule 21.1													
												sampling serial number					sample household number					SSS formation for Schedule 21.1			
												1 in col. 12	2 in col. 12	3 in col. 12	4 in col. 12	5 in col. 12									
												SSS					SSS					entry in col.8, col. 9, col.10	SSS no. (col.12)		
1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5																
(0)	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)	(12)	(13)	(14)	(15)	(16)	(17)	(18)	(19)	(20)	(21)	(22)			
1	60	19		5	2			2	2	2	2	5					√6							col.8=1 col.9=1	1
2	60	20		3	2			2	2	1	2	4			(√4)					2				col.8=2 col.9=1	2
3	60	21		2	2			2	1	-	2	2		(√6)				1						col.8=2 col.9=1	2
4	61/1	22		9	1			2	2	1	1	4			(√5)					1				col.8=1 col.9=2 col.10=1	3
5	61/1	23		5	2			2	1	-	2	2		√7										col.8=1 col.9=2 col.10=1	4
6	61/1	24		2	2			1	2	2	1	5					√7							col.8=2 col.9=2 col.10=1	5
7	61/1	25		2	2			2	1	-	2	2		√8										col.8=2 col.9=2 col.10=1	5
8	61/1	26		6	2			2	2	2	1	5					√8							col.8=1/2 col.9=2 col.10=2	5
9	62	27		8	1			1	2	2	2	5					√9							col.8=1/2 col.9=2 col.10=2	5
10	(4)	28		1	2			1	2	1	2	3			(√4)					2				col.8=1/2 col.9=2 col.10=2	5
page total				43																					
cumulative page total				102																					

col.5: hh size code: col.4 > 7 → 1, col.4 ≤ 7 → 2
 col.8: UMPCE code: UMPCE > A → 1, UMPCE ≤ A → 2

[5B] record of selection of households for Schedule 5.1 (MIS)																	
transfer entries from cols. of block 5A					SSS number	schedule 5.1											
col.0	col.2	col.5	col.8	col.11		sampling serial number					sample household number					SSS formation for schedule 5.1	
						1 in col. 23	2 in col. 23	3 in col. 23	4 in col. 23	5 in col. 23							
serial number of row	hh serial number	hh size code	UMPCE code	constructed /purchased any new house/ flat		SSS					SSS						
					1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5	entry in col.5, col. 8, col.11	SSS no. (col.23)	
(0)	(2)	(5)	(8)	(11)	(23)	(24)	(25)	(26)	(27)	(28)	(29)	(30)	(31)	(32)			(33)
1	19	2	2	2	5					(√8)					2	col.5=1 col. 8=1/2 col.11=1/2	1
2	20	2	2	2	5					√9						col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=1	2
3	21	2	2	2	5					√10						col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=1	3
4	22	1	2	1	1	√2										col.5=2 col. 8=2 col.11=1	4
5	23	2	2	2	5					(√11)					7	col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=2	5
6	24	2	1	1	2		(√2)					1				col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=2	4
7	25	2	2	2	5					√12						col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=2	5
8	26	2	2	1	3			((√4))					2			col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=2	5
9	27	1	1	2	1	(√3)					2					col.5=2 col. 8=2 col.11=2	5
10	28	2	1	2	4				√7							col.5=2 col. 8=2 col.11=2	5

[5A] list of households and structures and record of selection of households for Schedule 21.1																									
serial number of row	house number	household serial number	name of head of the household	household (hh) size	household (hh) size code (1 – 2)	usual monthly consumer expenditure of the hh (Rs)	UMPCE (Rs) (col. 6 ÷ col. 4)	UMPCE code (1 – 2)	any hh member completed overnight trip during last 365 days for medical/ holidaying/ shopping purpose? (yes-1, no-2)	for 2 in col. (9), hh member completed any other overnight trip during last 30 days? (yes-1, no-2)	whether the hh constructed /purchased any new house/ flat for residential purpose after 31st March, 2014 (yes=1, no=2)	schedule 21.1													
												sampling serial number					sample household number					SSS formation for Schedule 21.1			
												1 in col. 12	2 in col. 12	3 in col. 12	4 in col. 12	5 in col. 12	SSS								
												1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5	entry in col.8, col. 9, col.10	SSS no. (col.12)		
H=	H=	H=	H=	H=	h=	h=	h=	h=	h=																
(0)	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)	(12)	(13)	(14)	(15)	(16)	(17)	(18)	(19)	(20)	(21)	(22)			
1	63	29		4	2			2	1	-	2	2		√9										col.8=1 col.9=1	1
2	63/1	30		3	2			2	2	1	2	4				√6								col.8=2 col.9=1	2
3	64	31		5	2			1	2	1	1	3			√5									col.8=2 col.9=1	2
4	64A	32		4	2			1	2	2	2	5					√10								
5	65	33		6	2			1	1	-	2	1	(√3)					1						col.8=1 col.9=2 col.10=1	3
6	66	34		7	2			2	2	2	1	5					(√11)				2			col.8=1 col.9=2 col.10=1	4
7	67	35		6	2			1	2	1	2	3			√6									col.8=2 col.9=2 col.10=1	4
8		-	Shop																						
9	68	36		1	2			2	2	2	1	5					√12							col.8=1/2 col.9=2 col.10=2	5
10	69	37		2	2			2	1	-	2	2		√10											
page total				38																					
cumulative page total				140																					

col.5: hh size code: col.4 > 7 → 1, col.4 ≤ 7 → 2

col.8: UMPCE code: UMPCE > A → 1, UMPCE ≤ A → 2

[5B] record of selection of households for Schedule 5.1 (MIS)																	
transfer entries from cols. of block 5A					SSS number	schedule 5.1											
col.0	col.2	col.5	col.8	col.11		sampling serial number					sample household number					SSS formation for schedule 5.1	
						1 in col. 23	2 in col. 23	3 in col. 23	4 in col. 23	5 in col. 23							
serial number of row	hh serial number	hh size code	UMPCE code	constructed /purchased any new house/ flat		SSS					SSS						
					1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5	entry in col.5, col. 8, col.11	SSS no. (col.23)	
H=	H=	H=	H=	H=	h=	h=	h=	h=	h=								
(0)	(2)	(5)	(8)	(11)	(23)	(24)	(25)	(26)	(27)	(28)	(29)	(30)	(31)	(32)	(33)		
1	29	2	2	2	5					(√13)					4	col.5=1 col. 8=1/2 col.11=1/2	1
2	30	2	2	2	5					(√14)					6		
3	31	2	1	1	2		√3									col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=1	2
4	32	2	1	2	4				(√8)				4				
5	33	2	1	2	4				√9								
6	34	2	2	1	3			√5								col.5=2 col. 8=2 col.11=1	3
7	35	2	1	2	4				(√10)				5				
8																col.5=2 col. 8=1 col.11=2	4
9	36	2	2	1	3			√6									
10	37	2	2	2	5					√15						col.5=2 col. 8=2 col.11=2	5

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS AND THEIR REPLIES

Schedule 0.0: List of Households

sl. no.	block	item	col.	query	reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
1.	Concepts, Definitions			How to treat a census village for this survey, if the village is urbanized after census 2011?	If the urbanised village is not yet included in the urban frame, it should be surveyed as a rural FSU.
2.	Concepts, Definitions			A whole village is to be listed and census 2011 listing order is unavailable. In this situation, if it is difficult to find out the starting house for listing, can the listing be started from northwest corner of the village?	Yes, first we have to try our best to follow census 2011 listing order. If the census order is not available, listing may be done in serpentine manner starting from north-west corner and moving southwards.
3.	Concepts, Definitions			When a sample FSU needs to be substituted?	If a sample FSU cannot be surveyed because of not being uniquely identifiable or traceable or not accessible or for any other reason, it will be substituted.
4.	Concepts, Definitions			What are the criteria of paying guest?	A person will be considered as a paying guest only when he/she stays with the household, takes breakfast and major meals from the household. He/she should also pay a lump sum amount for the expenses.
5.	Concepts, Definitions			If some students living in a hostel and pool their income for expenditure on food and other consumable items, will they constitute a single household?	No, the students will be treated as single member households.

sl. no.	block	item	col.	query	reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
6.		Concepts, Definitions		A person has been visiting his home town which is outside his UPR every week for the last 4 months and he is having his house constructed there. Will it be considered as an overnight trip for the last 30 days if he stays there for one night every time and he is likely to make such visits for a period beyond 6 months?	If the person is likely to make such visits for a period beyond six months, those will not be treated as an overnight trip.
7.		Concepts, Definitions		A person goes on shopping away from his home in the same town/village and stays there overnight at his relative's house. Whether it will be considered an overnight trip?	No, it will not be an overnight trip as the UPR of the person is in the same town/village.
8.		Concepts, Definitions		A household has undertaken International Holiday Package and completed the trip within 6 months. How this household will be treated?	For stratification purposes, it will not be considered as a domestic trip.
9.		Concepts, Definitions		A person starts a trip ten days before last 365 days and the trip ends after first 5 days of last 365 days. Whether it is to be considered a trip? What will be the duration of such trip?	Yes, it will be considered a trip of duration 15 days.
10.		Concepts, Definitions		If a household member has been picked up from his house and held at a police station beyond his UPR for 2 days and returned home, whether it will be treated as overnight trip?	In this case, no overnight trip will be considered for this household member.
11.		Concepts, Definitions		A person left his UPR for holidaying and while returning back to the village met with an accident. He was immediately admitted to a hospital in his UPR. Will this be treated as a round trip?	This will be treated as a trip since returning back to the town/village (i.e. UPR) is criteria for deciding a round trip.
12.		Concepts, Definitions		A person goes on an overnight trip for shopping away from his UPR after every 15 days and is doing this for over a period of 2 years. Whether it will be considered an overnight trip?	Yes, it will be treated as an overnight trip, since the periodicity of trip is more than one week. Please refer to the definition of domestic overnight trip in Chapter One.
13.		Concepts, Definitions		A person visits his parental house every alternate day and stays there overnight. The person is doing this for the last three months and is likely to continue it for over	No, it will not be considered an overnight trip.

sl. no.	block	item	col.	query	reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
				a period of six months. Whether it will be considered an overnight trip?	
14.	Concepts, Definitions			Whether any overnight journey for construction of residence outside UPR will be considered as domestic overnight trip?	Yes, provided it fulfils other criteria of domestic overnight trip.
15.	Concepts, Definitions			A household member visits a religious place on LTC. Is the purpose of trip holidaying or pilgrimage?	The informant may be asked about the leading purpose of the trip and accordingly trip type will be decided.
16.	5A	-	6	Whether the lump sum payment (Admission Fee, Tuition Fee, Development Fee, Compulsory Donation etc.) made by the household for education purpose either biannually or annually is to be considered while reporting the usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household?	In this case, if the expenditure on education is incurred by the household once in six months or annually, the average expenditure per month may be calculated and included while reporting the usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household.
17.	5A	-	6	A household sending Rs. 10,000/- to his son for education. Son is residing in a hostel in some other place. Whether this amount will be taken into consideration while determining the usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household?	No, the amount sent to children staying in students' hostels will not be considered as a usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household, rather it will be accounted for in the student's household.
18.	5A	-	6	A household collects firewood free of cost from local forest and consumes it during the reference period. For the purpose of recording usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household whether imputed value of firewood will be considered?	Yes, imputed value of the firewood will be considered and it will be as per the average local retail prices prevailing in the market during the reference period.
19.	5A	-	6	If a household incurs expenditure on medicines regularly (viz., for blood pressure, diabetes), whether it should be included in computing usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household?	Yes, regular expenses on medicines will be considered for computing usual monthly consumer expenditure of a household.
20.	5A	-	6	Why will the expenses of birthday celebration which occurs on regular basis (once in each year), be not considered for the computation of usual monthly consumer expenditure of household?	The expenses incurred on social ceremonies will not be considered while computing the usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household.

sl. no.	block	item	col.	query	reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
21.	5A	-	8	For locked house what will be the UMPCE code?	Code 2 will be recorded for locked households.
22.	5A	-	9/10	During her last vacation, a working lady, along with her two children, visited Bangalore where her husband is working. Will this trip be considered for holidaying purpose?	The informant may be asked about her purpose of visit to Bangalore. Entry in col. (9) or (10) will be made accordingly.
23.	5A	-	9/10	A person travelled by air from Mumbai to Delhi at 6 am and returned back to Mumbai around 5 pm. Whether this trip will be considered as overnight trip?	In this case it will not be considered as an overnight trip since duration of stay outside the UPR did not include 12 midnight to 5 a.m.
24.	5A	-	9	Which code is to be given if a household member accompanied a patient (who is not a member of the household) to a hospital and satisfy conditions of overnight trip?	Code 2 will be recorded.
25.	5A	-	9	A household member who lives in Rishikesh and spent 2 months in Kedarnath on official deputation and came back. Will it be treated as a trip?	Yes. It will be considered as an overnight trip.
26.	5A	-	9	A household during listing reported that they have come here a month ago and will stay at this place for 2 years. They also reported an overnight trip 3 months ago from their previous UPR. Will this be treated as a trip?	Yes, it will be treated as overnight trip provided it satisfies all other criteria of domestic overnight trip.
27.	5A	-	9	A man and his son had gone to Delhi where the son met with an accident. Hearing this, the mother went to Delhi to see her son. Will the trip of the mother be an overnight trip for medical purpose, provided the other criteria are fulfilled?	This trip may not be considered for medical purpose in col. (9). However, the trip will be treated as an overnight trip in col. (10) if it was performed during last 30 days.
28.	5A	-	9	A household member who is a teacher by profession accompanied his students on a trip. Since the household member's trip is part of his duty, will this be considered for affirmative coding in this column?	Yes, this can be considered as a trip if the trips are not repeated frequently as mentioned in the definition of domestic overnight trip.
29.	5A	-	9	Is it necessary to ascertain during listing, the leading purpose for the trip when any household member performed any overnight trip for	Yes. If a household member performed any overnight trip with leading purpose of medical/ holidaying/ shopping

sl. no.	block	item	col.	query	reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
				medical/holidaying/shopping?	then only, it will be considered; otherwise it will not be considered as overnight trip in col. (9).
30.	5A	-	9	A lady is staying away from her UPR because of child birth in hospital. Can it be treated as overnight trip for medical purpose?	Yes, it will be considered as an overnight trip for medical purpose provided the hospital is outside her UPR.
31.	5A	-	9	Within the reference period, one household member gets transferred from Mumbai to Kolkata and is again transferred back to Mumbai after a short period of stay in Kolkata. Whether such movements will be considered as overnight trip?	No, this will not be considered as overnight trip for the purpose of our survey.
32.	5A	-	9	A member of the household has gone to another city for attending a marriage function. He stayed there for 14 hours approximately. Whether this trip will be considered as overnight trip?	Unless the duration of the trip includes 12 midnight to 5 a.m. in two consecutive calendar days, it will not be treated as overnight trip.
33.	5A	-	9	A shopkeeper had been offered a gift in form of free trip to Goa in lieu of bumper sale of a product of a company. What will be the purpose of such trip?	The informant needs to be asked about the leading purpose of the trip and accordingly code 1 or 2 may be given in col. (9).
34.	5A	-	9	A mentally retarded person has left his home. After few days his brother searched and found the retarded person out of UPR and brought his brother back home. What are the purposes of the trips performed by the retarded person and his brother?	For brother the purpose of trip is 'others' whereas for the retarded person the movement/journey is not to be considered trip as there is no destination and no purpose.
35.	5A	-	9	While listing of households, different members may have different purposes of overnight trips. Whether code 1 will be recorded in this column for leading purpose of the journey or simply a member having trip for medical/holidaying/shopping purpose will be considered?	Leading purpose of the trip will be considered here.

sl. no.	block	item	col.	query	reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
36.	5A	-	9	A household member went to a relative's place for marriage. After staying there for 4 days the person fell ill and was admitted to hospital for 2 days. Whether this will be treated as overnight medical trip in col. (9)?	The purpose before undertaking the trip was social. So, even with the hospitalization of the member this will be treated as social trip.
37.	5A	-	10	A person has been asked to report to the police station (outside UPR) once in 15 days. Whether this will be treated as an overnight trip?	It will be considered as an overnight trip provided it fulfils all criteria of overnight trip.
38.	5A		10	A household member who is a singer performs trips for his stage performances to different places not regularly. Whether this can be considered as a trip?	Since he performs at different places at different time periods, all will qualify as trips, provided the required conditions of overnight trip are satisfied.

Chapter Three

SCHEDULE 21.1: DOMESTIC TOURISM EXPENDITURE

3.0. Introduction

3.0.0. National Statistical Office (NSO) conducted a survey on Domestic Tourism during 65th round (July 2008-June 2009). Again in 72nd round (July, 2014 to June, 2015), NSO carried out a survey on 'Domestic Tourism Expenditure'. Data on different aspects of overnight trips obtained from the survey on Domestic Tourism Expenditure are important input for preparation of Tourism Satellite Account. Tourism Satellite Account (TSA) of India and Regional TSAs for all State/UTs are prepared by Ministry of Tourism (MoT) with an approximate gap of 5 years. Ministry of Tourism used data of Domestic Tourism Surveys conducted by NSO during 65th (2008-09) and 72nd (2014-15) rounds extensively to obtain necessary inputs for deriving 2nd and 3rd Tourism Satellite Accounts (TSA).

In NSS Domestic Tourism Surveys, in addition to the details of tourism expenditure, information is collected on different aspects like *purpose of the trip, mode of transport and accommodation used during the trip, final destination within the country*, use of various tourism specific products and services for the trip, etc. These constitute a valuable source of input for further policy research and for formulation of sector specific policies and programmes for creation and development of infrastructure, tour packages, etc. Some important results obtained from the Domestic Tourism Expenditure Survey of NSS 72nd round (July, 2014 to June, 2015) are given in **Statement -I** at the end of this Chapter.

3.0.1 NSO, as part of its 78th round, will conduct a survey on Domestic Tourism Expenditure. The survey period of the 78th round will be from January to December, 2020.

3.0.2 Domestic Tourism Expenditure Survey of NSS 78th round is designed to collect detailed information on expenditure on domestic tourism along with some information on household characteristics, demographic particulars of the household members, visitor characteristics and trip characteristics in relation to domestic overnight trips, required for preparation of Tourism Satellite Account (TSA) which will be done by the Ministry of Tourism (MoT). In addition, some important information on trips and expenditure in connection with domestic same-day trips and information on services of tour operators, tour guides, etc., availed by the domestic tourists will also be collected in this survey.

3.0.3. **Summary description of the schedule:** In the present round, Schedule 21.1 meant for domestic tourism expenditure survey consists of 13 blocks. The first three blocks, viz., Block 0,

Block 1 and Block 2 are to be used for recording identification of sample households and particulars of field operations, as practised in previous rounds. The last two blocks, viz., Block 9 and Block 10 are to be used to record the remarks/comments of investigator and supervisory officer(s) respectively. Block 3 is to be used for recording the demographic and other particulars of all the household members. Such particulars include name of the household member, relation to head, gender, age, marital status, educational level and usual principal activity status. Block 4 will be for recording the household characteristics like household size, principal industry and principal occupation of household, household type, religion, social group and household's usual monthly consumer expenditure (Rs.) etc. In Block 5.1, particulars of overnight trips of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed by household members during last 365 days (for the leading purposes of health & medical; holidaying, leisure & recreation; and shopping) are to be recorded. These include serial no. of the trip, number of household members in that trip, details of the characteristics of each household member who was in that trip, like serial no. of the member, age (as recorded in block 3), purpose of trip for the member, type of trip (package or non-package), mode of travel (major and minor), type of stay (major and minor), etc. and also characteristics of the trip like leading purpose of the trip, starting month, etc. In Block 5.2 particulars of overnight trips of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed by household members during last 30 days (for the leading purposes business; social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.); pilgrimage & religious activities; education & training; others) are to be recorded. Similar details as in block 5.1 are also to be collected here for these above mentioned leading purposes. Block 6.1 is designed to collect particulars of expenditure (Rs.) for all trips completed during the *last 365 days* covered in block 5.1. Here, the break-up of expenditure is to be recorded in detail along with information on reimbursement/direct payment by any institution. Similarly in Block 6.2 particulars of expenditure (Rs.) for all trips completed during *last 30 days* covered in block 5.2 are to be recorded. In addition, information on the services of tour operator/ tour guides availed by the household members for the purpose of the overnight trips undertaken by them (as reported in block 5.1 and Block 5.2) will be collected in Block 6.1 and Block 6.2 respectively. If the specific services are availed, it will be further probed whether they are satisfied with the services or not. Block 7 is for collecting the particulars and expenditure (Rs.) of same-day trips completed by household members during last 30 days. The information to be collected in block 7 are serial number of the trip, number of household members in that trip, leading purpose of the trip etc. Expenditure in this block is collected for package and non-package components separately. In case of non-package components, figures for each component (like accommodation, food & drink, transport, etc.) are to be collected separately for same-day trips by different leading purposes. Additionally, in respect of same-day trips undertaken for leading purposes *leisure & recreation* and *social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.)* information on the services of tour operator/ tour guide availed by the household for the purpose of the trips (as collected in block 6.1 and Block 6.2) will also be collected.

Block 8 captures the particulars and expenditure (Rs.) of domestic trips of duration of more than 180 days but up to 365 days, completed by household members during last 365 days in terms of serial no. of the trip, number of household members in that trip, leading purpose of the trip and total expenditure. The information on the services of tour operator/tour guide availed by the household members for the purpose of the trip will be collected in this block also.

In a nutshell, the schedule consists of the following blocks:

Block No.	Description of the Block
Block 0	Descriptive identification of sample household
Block 1	Identification of sample household
Block 2	Particulars of field operations
Block 3	Demographic and other particulars of all household members
Block 4	Household characteristics
Block 5.1	Particulars of overnight trips of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed by household members during last 365 days (for leading purposes health & medical ; holidaying, leisure and recreation; and shopping)
Block 5.2	Particulars of overnight trips of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed by household members during last 30 days [for leading purposes business, social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.), pilgrimage & religious activities, education & training , others]
Block 6.1	particulars of expenditure (Rs.) for all trips in last 365 days covered in block 5.1
Block 6.2	particulars of expenditure (Rs.) for all trips in last 30 days covered in block 5.2
Block 7	Particulars and expenditure(Rs.) of same-day trips completed by household members during last 30 days
Block 8	Particulars and expenditure (Rs.) of special domestic trips of duration of more than 180 days but less than or equal to 365 days, completed by household members during last 365 days
Block 9	Remarks by investigator (FI)/JSO
Block 10	Comments by SSO

3.0.4. Modalities of canvassing the Schedule 21.1

3.0.4.1. Block 0, 1, 2 and 4 will be canvassed for all the selected households whereas block 3, 5.1 to 8 will be canvassed for all the members of the selected households. Blocks 5.1 and 6.1 are applicable **only** if at least one overnight trip of duration less than or equal to 180 days was completed by any/some household member(s) during the last 365 days for any of the leading purposes *health & medical; holidaying, leisure & recreation and shopping*. Blocks 5.2 and 6.2 are to be canvassed **only** if at least one overnight trip of duration less than or equal to 180 days was completed by any/some household member(s) during the last 30 days for any of the leading

purposes *business; social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.); pilgrimage & religious activities; education & training; other*. Similarly, Block 7 is applicable **only** if at least one same-day trip was completed by any/some household member(s) during the last 30 days for any of the leading purposes under coverage of the survey. Lastly Block 8 is to be canvassed if any/some household member(s) performed any overnight trip of duration of more than 180 days but up to 365 days during the reference period of last 365 days for any of the leading purposes which are considered for the survey.

3.0.4.2. The detailed description of these blocks and the concepts and definitions for various items in them and the method of making entries in the schedule against these items, are explained in the subsequent paragraphs.

3.1. Block 0 & 1: Identification of sample household:

3.1.1 Block 0: Descriptive Identification of sample household: This block is meant for recording descriptive identification particulars of the sample household and the sample village/block to which the sample household belongs. All the items in this block are self-explanatory.

- ❖ For rural households, entries against items 1-4 will be the same as those in Block 0 of Sch. 0.0. Similarly, for urban households, entries against items 1-3 and 5 will be the same as the corresponding items in Block 0 of Sch. 0.0.
- ❖ Item 4 will record village name to which the sample household belongs. For urban households a dash ('-') mark will be recorded against each of this item.
- ❖ Item 5 will record investigator unit/block to which the sample household belongs. For rural households a dash ('-') mark will be recorded against this item.
- ❖ Item 6, sample sub-unit (SU) number will be obtained from item 7 of Block 0 of Schedule 0.0
- ❖ Item 7, sample sub-division number will be obtained from Block 4.3 of Schedule 0.0
- ❖ Against item 8, the name of the head of the selected sample household will be copied from column 3 of Block 5A of Sch. 0.0.
- ❖ The entry against item 9 will be the name of the informant, i.e. the person from whom the bulk of the information is collected.

3.1.2. Block 1: Identification of sample household:

3.1.2.1. Identification particulars of the sample household are to be recorded against items 1 to 6. The entries against items 2 and 3 are already printed in the schedule. Items 4 will be obtained from Block 4.3 of Schedule 0.0. Items 5 and 6 will be copied from relevant part of block 5A of Sch. 0.0. The serial number of informant (as in column 1 of block 3) will be recorded against item 7. The informant is the person from whom the bulk of the information is collected.

3.1.2.2. **Item 5: second stage stratum number:** This will be obtained from headings of

columns (13), (14), (15), (16) & (17) of block 5A of sch. 0.0.

3.1.2.3. Item 6: sample household number: This is same as the order of selection of the sample household and this will be obtained from columns (18), (19), (20), (21) & (22) of block 5A of sch.0.0.

3.1.2.4. Item 7: serial number of informant: Serial number of the person recorded in column (1) of block 3 of Sch.21.1, from whom the bulk of the information is collected will be entered. It is always desirable to collect information from one of the household members. In extreme cases, where this cannot be done, information may be collected from a non- household member who is supposed to know the requisite information. In such a case, '99' should be recorded against this item.

3.1.2.5. Item 8: response code: This item is to be filled in at the end of the interview. It is meant to categorize the informant according to the degree of his/her co-operation as well as his/her capability to provide the required information. The codes are:

informant co-operative and capable	1
informant co-operative but not capable...	2
informant busy.....	3
informant reluctant.....	4
others.....	9

3.1.2.6. Item 9: survey code: The survey codes are as follows:

household, surveyed:	
original	1
substitute.....	2
household, casualty	3

If the originally selected sample household has been surveyed, code 1 will be entered against this item. However, if the originally selected household could not be surveyed for whatever might be the reason, a substituted household will be surveyed and in such cases, code 2 will be entered. If neither the originally selected household nor the substituted household could be surveyed, i.e., if the sample household is a casualty, code '3' will be recorded. In such cases, only the Blocks 0, 1, 2, 9 and 10 will be filled in and on the top of the front page of the schedule the word 'CASUALTY' will be written and underlined.

3.1.2.7. Item 10: reason for substitution of original household: In case the originally selected sample household could not be surveyed, the reason for not surveying the original household will be recorded against this item, irrespective of whether or not a substituted household could be surveyed. This item is applicable if the entry against item 9 is either 2 or 3. Otherwise, this item is to be left blank.

The codes are as follows:

informant busy	1
members away from home	2
informant non-cooperative	3
others	9

3.2. Block 2: Particulars of field operations:

3.2.0. The names of the Field Investigator(s)/ JSO(s), Field Officer (FO)/ SSO, their signatures, dates of survey/ inspection/scrutiny, dispatch, etc. will be recorded in this block against the appropriate items in the relevant columns. Besides these, from the 46th round onwards, person codes of field officials have been introduced and these code are also to be recorded against item 1(ii) (for central sample only). If more than one day is required to canvass the schedule, the first day of survey is to be recorded against the item serial number 2(i). Total time taken to canvass sch.21.1 will be recorded in item 4. Entry in item 4 will be made in whole number and in minutes. *The time required to canvass the schedule should be the actual time taken by the investigator(s) to canvass the schedule and will not include the time needed by the investigator(s) to finalise the schedule.*

3.3. Block 3: Demographic and other particulars of all household members

3.3.0. In this block, demographic particulars (viz., relation to head, gender, age, and marital status), educational level, usual principal activity status will be recorded using one line for each of the members of the household.

3.3.1. **Col. 1: serial no. (srl. no.)** : A running serial number will be given in this column for each member of the sample household starting with the head of the household. The other members will be listed in the usual fashion with the spouse of the head and their children following and the non-relatives at the end.

3.3.2. **Col. 2: name of the household member:** The names of all the members will be written clearly in this column in the order in which they are listed. Name may be shortened to accommodate it in the given space.

3.3.3. **Col. 3: relation to head (code):** The relationship of each of the members to the head of the household will be recorded against the members listed in codes as follows:

self	... 1
spouse of head	... 2
married child	... 3
spouse of married child	... 4
unmarried child	... 5
grandchild	... 6
father/mother/father-in-law/mother-in-law	... 7
brother/sister/brother-in-law/sister-in-law/other relatives	... 8
servant/employee/other non-relatives	...9

3.3.4. **Col. 4: gender (code):** Gender code of each member is to be recorded with code 1 for male and code 2 for female. Hijras, Eunuchs or transgender are to be treated as “transgender” and in such cases code 3 will be recorded.

3.3.5. **Col. 5: age:**The age in completed years of all the members listed, will be ascertained and recorded in column (5). For infants below one year of age, ‘0’ will be entered in column (5).

3.3.6. **Col. 6: marital status (code):** The marital status of each member will be recorded in this column. The codes are:

- never married - 1,
- currently married - 2,
- widowed - 3,
- divorced/separated - 4.

Couples living together will be treated as *currently married*.

3.3.7. **Col 7: highest level of education (code):** Highest level of education successfully completed by the household member (and not the education level of currently attending, if the household member is currently attending education) will be ascertained recorded in terms of the following codes:

highest level of education successfully completed	Code
not literate (i.e. not able to read or write a simple message with understanding in any language)	01
literate with non-formal education (like, NFEC, AEC, TLC, literate without any schooling, etc.).....	02
<i>literate with formal education</i>	
below primary.....	03
primary	04
upper primary/middle	05
secondary	06
higher secondary -.....	07
diploma /certificate course (up to secondary)...	08
diploma/certificate course (higher secondary)...	10
diploma/certificate course(graduation & above)..	11
graduate	12
post graduate and above	13

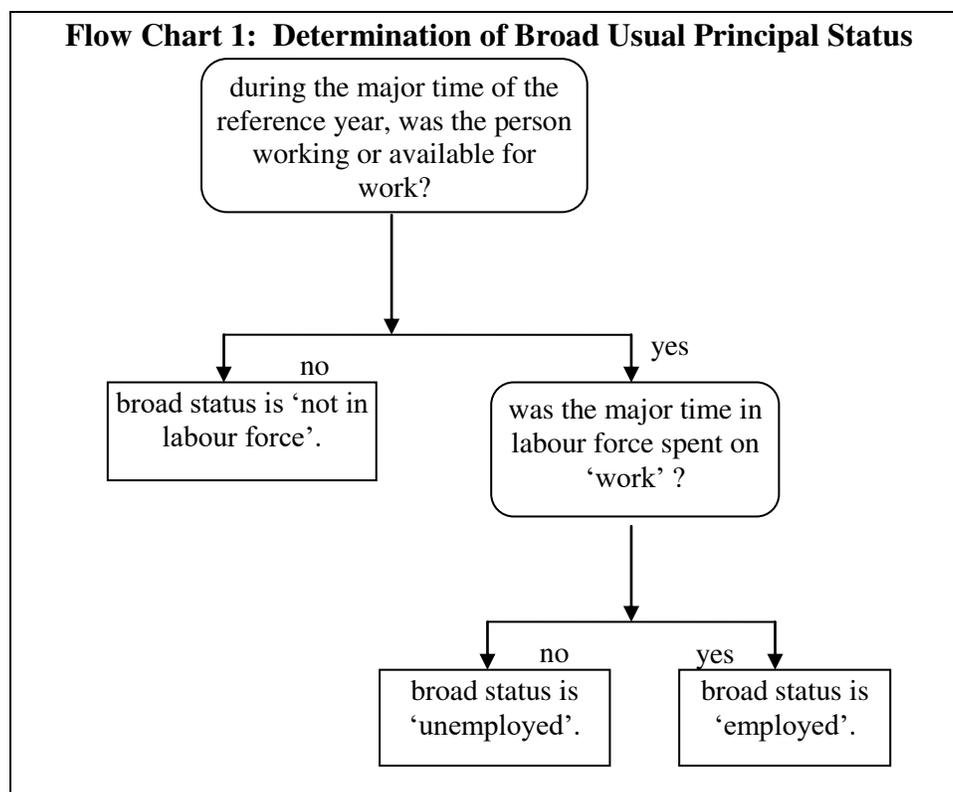
A person is considered *literate* if he/she can read and write a simple message in any language with understanding. Persons who are not able to read and write a simple message with understanding in at least one language is to be considered *not literate* and would be assigned code 01. Those who are literate with non-formal education or without any schooling, code will be 02. Non-formal education includes education with Non-formal Education Courses (NFEC), Total Literacy Campaign (TLC), Adult Education Centres (AEC), etc. Persons, who are literate with formal education, will be given any of the codes 03 to 08, 10 to 13. Those who are literate through formal education but who are yet to pass primary standard examination, would be assigned code 03. Similarly codes 04 to 08, and 10 to 13 should be assigned to those who have passed the appropriate levels. Persons who have attained proficiency in Oriental languages (e.g., Sanskrit, Persian, etc.) through formal but not through the general type of education will be classified appropriately at the equivalent level of general education standard. Code 12 will be assigned to those who have obtained degree, which is equivalent to graduation level. Similarly, code 13 will be assigned to those who have obtained degree, which is equivalent to post-graduation level and above.

It may be noted that for the purpose of this survey, the primary level is defined as Class I-V for all the States/UTs uniformly.

3.3.8. Column (8): Status: For each of the member of the household, the usual principal activity status will be recorded in this column. In the first instance, the broad usual principal activity of the person will be identified based on the various activities pursued by the person during the reference period of last 365 days adopting a 'relatively long time (or major time)' criterion, not necessarily for a continuous period.

3.3.8.1. Identification of broad usual principal activity status: The broad usual principal activity status will be obtained on the basis of a two stage dichotomous classification depending on the major time spent. Persons will be classified in the first stage into (i) those who are engaged in any economic activity (i.e. employed) and / or available for any economic activity (i.e., unemployed) and (ii) who are not engaged and also not available for any economic activity (i.e., not in labour force). Thus, the persons will be first classified as those in the labour force and those not in the labour force depending on in which status, out of these two, the person spent major part of the year. In the second stage, those who are found in the labour force will be further classified into working (i.e., engaged in economic activity or employed) and seeking and/or available for work (i.e., unemployed) based on the major time spent. Thus, we can obtain the broad usual principal status as one of the three viz. employed, unemployed and out of labour force.

3.3.8.2. Flow Chart 1 explains the procedure for determining the broad usual principal activity status.



3.3.8.3. Detailed usual principal activity status: With the broad activity status identified for a person, detailed activity categories will be assigned on the basis of relatively long time spent on a detailed activity. For example, suppose person had worked as own account worker in household enterprises without hiring labour for 8 months and worked as casual labour for 4 months, then his usual principal activity status would be, worked in household enterprise (own account worker).

The detailed usual principal status activity codes are as given below:

activity status	code
worked in household enterprise (self-employed) as own account worker	...11
worked in household enterprise (self-employed) as employer	...12
worked as helper in household enterprises (unpaid family worker)	...21
worked as regular salaried/wage employee	...31
worked as casual wage labour : in public works	...41
in other types of work	...51
did not work but was seeking and/or available for work	...81
attended educational institutions	...91
attended domestic duties only	...92
attended domestic duties and was also engaged in free collection of goods	...93

activity status	code
(vegetables, roots, firewood, cattle-feed etc) sewing, tailing, weaving, etc. for household use	
rentiers, pensioners, remittance recipients, etc.	...94
not able to work due to disability	...95
others (including begging, prostitution, etc.)	...97

Codes 11, 12, 21, 31, 41 & 51 refer to the 'employed', 81 to the 'unemployed' and the remaining viz. 91 to 97 refer to the 'not in labour force'. For persons of age 0 - 4 years, code 99 will be generated as the usual principal activity status.

Some special cases for determining usual principal activity status are listed below:

(i) It is to be noted that availability for work being more of a status than an activity, a person being available for work may well be engaged in one or more of the activities denoted by codes 91 to 97. In all such cases except those engaged as students (code 91), persons will be categorised as 'unemployed' if he/she reports to be available for work for a relatively long period in spite of his/her being engaged simultaneously in a non-economic activity. But, if a person who was available for work is reported to have attended educational institution more or less regularly for a relatively long period during the preceding 365 days, further probing as to whether he will give up the study if the job is available is to be made before considering him as 'unemployed'.

(ii) Again, it also needs to be emphasised that the procedure to be followed in ascertaining the activity status of a domestic servant who is a member of the employer's household is different from that adopted for other members of the household. Although a domestic servant staying in the employer's household and taking food from the common kitchen is, by definition, a member of the employer's household, he/she is also *engaged in domestic duties in return for wages* in cash and/or kind. Thus, *as a special case, domestic duties pursued by a domestic servant will be considered as an economic activity* and the activity status code as is applicable will be assigned to him/her.

(iii) Carpenters, masons, plumbers, etc., who move from place to place in search of work and carry out the work on a contract basis (not on wage basis) whenever work is available, will be considered as 'own-account worker'. But if such persons are working on a wage basis under a contractor, they will be considered as employee.

3.4. Block 4: Household characteristics

3.4.0. Certain household characteristics, such as, household size, principal industry, principal occupation, household type, religion, social group, number of overnight trips undertaken by the

household during last 365 days for some specific leading purposes, household usual consumption expenditure in a month will be recorded in this block.

3.4.1. Item 1: household size: Definition of ‘Household’ is given in Chapter One. The size of the sample household i.e., the total number of persons normally residing together (i.e., under the same roof) and taking food from the same kitchen (including temporary stay-aways and excluding temporary visitors) will be recorded against this item. This number will tally with the last serial number in the column 1 of Block 3.

3.4.2. Item 2: principal industry (NIC-2008): The description of the principal industry of the household will be recorded in the space provided. The description of the principal industry should be recorded in as specific terms as possible based on the description given by the informant. In other words, the industry description should not be copied from the NIC booklet if the informant’s description gives a clearer idea of the industrial activity, which determines the principal industry of the household. The entry cell for item 2 has been split into five parts for recording each digit separately. The appropriate five-digit industry code of the NIC-2008 will be recorded here. For households deriving income from non-economic activities only, a dash(-) may be put against this item. The procedure for determination of principal industry of the household is described in Chapter One.

3.4.3. Item 3: principal occupation (NCO-2004): The description of the principal occupation of the household will be recorded in the space provided. The description of the principal occupation should be recorded in as specific terms as possible based on the description given by the informant, as in case of principal industry. In other words, the occupation description should not be copied from the NCO booklet if the informant’s description gives a clearer idea of the principal occupation pursued by the household. The appropriate three-digit occupation code of the NCO-2004 is to be recorded in the entry cell, which has been divided into three parts for recording each digit separately. For households deriving income from non-economic activities only, a dash (-) may be put against this item. The procedure for determination of principal occupation of the household is described in Chapter One.

3.4.4. Item 4: household type(code): The household type is determined on the basis of the income earned by the household from different sources during the 365 days preceding the date of survey (procedure for determining household type in rural and urban areas are given in Chapter One). Note that the codes are not the same for rural and urban areas.

For rural households, the household type codes are:		For urban areas, the household type codes are:	
self-employed in agriculture	-1,	self-employed	-1,
self-employed in non-agriculture	-2,	regular wage/salary earning	-2,
regular wage/salary earning in agriculture	-3,	casual labour	-3,
regular wage/salary earning in non-agriculture	-4,	others	-9
casual labour in agriculture	-5,		

casual labour in non-agriculture	-6,
others	-9.

A household, which does not have any income from economic activities, will get type code 9 (others).

3.4.5. Item 5: religion (code): The religion of the household will be recorded against this item in code. In case different members of the household claim to belong to different religions, then the religion of the head of the household will be considered as the 'religion' of the household.

The codes are:

Hinduism	1	Jainism	5
Islam	2	Buddhism	6
Christianity	3	Zoroastrianism	7
Sikhism	4	others	9

3.4.6. Item 6: social group (code): Whether or not the household belongs to scheduled tribe, scheduled caste or other backward class will be indicated against this item in terms of the specified codes which are:

scheduled tribe (ST) - 1,	other backward class (OBC) - 3,
scheduled caste (SC)- 2,	others - 9

Those who do not come under any one of the first three social groups will be assigned code 9, meant to cover all other categories. In case different members belong to different social groups, the one to which the head of the household belongs will be considered as the 'social group' of the household.

3.4.7. Item 7: number of overnight trips of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed by the household during last 365 days for different leading purposes: Number of overnight trips of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed by the household during last 365 days for the following leading purposes will be recorded, separately:

- Item 7.1: business;
- Item 7.2: social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.);
- Item 7.3: pilgrimage & religious activities;
- Item 7.4: education & training;
- Item 7.5: others (*excluding trips for leading purposes like holidaying, leisure and recreation health & medical shopping, trips to fixed place of study/work, for migrating and getting employed, setting up residence*).

Definition of overnight trips, leading purpose and scope of different leading purposes are given in Chapter One.

3.4.8. Item 8 to 13: household's usual monthly consumer expenditure (Rs.): Items 8 to 13 are for deriving household's usual consumer expenditure. Entries in items 8 to 12 will be in whole

number of rupees. Item 13 will be derived on the basis of the entries in Items 8 to 12. Description of the items are given below:

- **Item 8:** usual consumer expenditure in a month for household purposes out of purchase of goods and services *excluding items like clothing, footwear* (A)
- **Item 9:** imputed value of usual consumption in a month from home grown stock like, rice, cereals, pulses, vegetables, milk, firewood, chips, cow dung, etc. (B)
- **Item 10:** imputed of usual consumption in a month from wages in kind, free collection, gifts, etc. (C)
- **Item 11:** expenditure on purchase of items like clothing, footwear, etc. **during last 365 days** (D)
- **Item 12:** expenditure on purchase of household durables **during last 365 days** (E)
- **Item 13:** usual monthly consumer expenditure. Item 13 will be derived on the basis of the entries in item 8 to 12 as $[A + B + C + (D+E)/12]$ and entry will be made in in whole number of rupees rounded to the nearest rupee.

It may be noted that unusual expenditures, such as expenditure on social ceremonies, capitation fee, hospitalization, etc., are to be excluded for deriving usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household

3.5. Blocks 5.1: Particulars of overnight trips of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed by household members during last 365 days (for leading purposes health & medical; holidaying, leisure and recreation; and shopping

3.5.0. In this block particulars of all the overnight trips of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed in the last 365 days for the leading purposes *health & medical; holidaying, leisure and recreation; and shopping* will be recorded. Definition of domestic overnight trips, leading purpose, etc., has already been mentioned in Chapter One. It may be noted that columns 1-2 & 12-15 of this Block are trip related information and the same will be recorded only once for each trip (*corresponding to the first row for that trip*) whereas columns 3-11 are related to visitor(s) who performed that trip and will be filled for all the household members who were in that trip.

3.5.1. **Column 1: Srl. no. of trip:** A running serial number will be given in this column for each overnight trip undertaken by any of the household members during last 365 days, starting with the latest completed trip. Thus the trip completed last is to be given serial number 1, the trip completed just before trip 1 is to be given serial number 2 and so on.

3.5.2. **Column 2: No. of household members in the trip:** The total number of household members who were in the trip will be recorded here.

3.5.3. Column 3: Srl. no. of household member who was in that trip (as in col. 1, block 3):

Here the serial number of each household member who were in that trip is to be recorded. This number is to be recorded as in Block 4. Different rows are to be used for different household members.

3.5.4. Column 4: age (as in col. 5, block 3): Here, the age of each household member who took part in the trip is to be recorded. This age is to be recorded as in column 5, Block 3.

3.5.5. Column 5: Purpose of the trip for the member (code): In a particular trip, different members might have undertaken the trip because of different purposes. Suppose the household member reports the purpose of a trip as 'business'. To ascertain the purpose, the household member may be asked – "Would you have undertaken the trip if no *business* was needed to be done?" The purpose would be taken as 'business' only if the answer is 'no'. In this way the purpose of each household member who undertook the trip is to be recorded here.

The applicable codes are:

<i>Business</i>	-1	<i>Education & training</i>	-5
<i>Holidaying, leisure and recreation</i>	-2	<i>Health & medical</i>	-6
<i>Social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.)</i>	-3	<i>Shopping</i>	-7
<i>Pilgrimage & religious activities</i>	-4	<i>Others</i>	-9

There may be exceptional situations where any one purpose cannot be identified as the unique purpose for a household member. In such a case, the purpose will be identified as that purpose which the informant considers to be the most important for his/her trip. Description and scope of different purposes are given in Chapter One.

3.5.6. Column 6: Type of trip (code): A trip can be of two types: *package* and *non-package*. Definitions of *package* and *non-package* trips are given in Chapter One. Within a package trip, travellers receive a combination of products associated with a trip, which are made of more than one of the following tourism services: *transportation services, accommodation services, food serving services, sight/seeing services, entertainment services, etc.* and other goods and services. If a trip is a *package* trip then code '1' should be given, otherwise code '2' should be recorded. It may be noted here that a package trip must have a package component but not *vice versa*.

3.5.7. Mode of travel (code): Mode of *travel* refers to means of transport used by visitor(s) to travel in a trip. The admissible codes are:

on foot-01, bus-02, train(railways)-03, ship/boat-04, air-05, own transport: motorised-06, non-motorised-07; transport equipment, rental (hired transport): motorised-08, non-motorised-10; others -19

Description of different means of transport are given below:

- i. **Bus:** This category includes travel by any type of bus like public, private, chartered, luxury, Volvo, etc. Trams or trolley-buses are included in this category. Vans, trekkers, maxis and other vehicles used for public transportation or transportation of a large number of persons should also be included in this category. Buses, hired for *Barat*, picnic, excursion etc., will also be covered here.
- ii. **Train (railways):** This category includes travel by rail (surface/underground), toy train, etc. as means of transport. Travel by hired railway coaches will also come under this category.
- iii. **Ship/boat:** This category includes travel by passenger line and ferry, cruise ship, yacht and other modes of water transport necessary for movement in a trip. Travel by hired ship/boat will be included here. .
- iv. **Air:** This category includes travel by flights (scheduled or chartered or private), helicopter and other modes of air transport necessary for movement in a trip.
- v. **Own transport:**

Motorised: This category includes travel by all forms of motorised transport which are owned.

Non-motorised: This includes travel by owned transport, which is not motorised, e.g. bicycle, rickshaw, animal driven transport (like horse-cart, bullock-cart, camel-cart etc.). This category excludes travel on horse-back, pony-back etc, for which are included in 'others'.

For 'own transport', the owner must be a member of the household who may or may not be a visitor. However, if the vehicle is borrowed rental-free from a non-household member, it should be treated as owned.

- vi. **Transport equipment, rental (hired transport): motorised and non-motorised**

Transport equipment, rental (hired transport): The transport equipment must be hired with or without driver/helper and should not be public transport or owned by a household member. It may be shared with any other person (s) who is/are not member(s) of the trip.

This category excludes travel on horse-back, pony-back etc, for which the code should be '19', i.e. 'others'. Hired bus, railway coaches, boat/ship are also excluded from this item. These are included in bus (code '02'), train (code '03') and ship/boat (code '04') respectively.

vii. Others:

This category includes means of transport which are not included in the codes 01 to 08 and 10, such as cable car, transport by animals like horse-back, pony-back, transport by humans like palanquin (*palki*), *doli* carriages, etc.

3.5.7.1. Column 7: Major (maximum distance travelled): The means of transport by which maximum distance was travelled will be treated as 'major' *mode of travel* for that visitor and the corresponding code will be recorded against this item. In case more than one such mode was used by the visitor [e.g. train, air] for which equal distance was travelled then entry is to be recorded for that means which was more expensive. In such cases, the less expensive mode among the two will be the minor mode of travel.

3.5.7.2. Column 8: Minor (2nd maximum distance travelled): The means of transport by which second maximum distance was travelled in a trip by the visitor will be treated as 'minor' *mode of travel* for that visitor and the corresponding code will be recorded against this item.

3.5.8. Type of stay (code): The *type of stay* refers to the accommodation used for stay by visitor(s) in an overnight trip. Accommodation refers to the space, whether paid or unpaid, where the visitor(s) spent some considerable time for spending night, taking rest, spending some leisure time, refreshing oneself, etc. during the trip. The admissible codes are: hotel-1, guest house-2, dharamshala-3, rented house-4, friends & relatives-5, homestay -6, others -9.

- i. **Hotel:** A hotel is an establishment that provides paid lodging, usually on a short-term basis. At times, hotels provide a number of additional guest services such as a restaurant, a swimming pool, childcare, etc., with or without extra cost.
- ii. **Guest house:** These are the accommodation units owned and managed by Central or State Governments/ local bodies/PSUs, autonomous bodies funded by govt. like ISI, IIPS etc., or private entrepreneurs/ bodies.
- iii. **Dharamshala:** A Dharamshala is a rest house usually for accommodation of visitors during their pilgrimage. It is generally a dormitory for pilgrims located near religious places. Accommodation may be free or at some charge.

- iv. **Rented house:** If any part or whole of any residential unit, owned solely or jointly by an individual or a group of individuals, is rented to tourists then that type of accommodation will come under this item. If accommodation charges relating to the trip were paid for accommodation provided by friends and relatives, the visitors should be regarded as having stayed in a *rented house*.
- v. **Friends & relatives:** It may be noted that if during the trip the household member stayed in the place of friends and relatives without making any payment for the accommodation, then this type of accommodation will be classified in '*friends & relatives*'.
- vi. **Homestay:** Homestay is an accommodation unit where the owner/promoter resides in the premises and has a minimum of one or maximum of six lettable rooms.
- vii. **Others:** Examples are carriages/coaches, tents, etc. Transit in Bus/Rail/Air of a journey is to be considered as 'other' type of stay.

3.5.8.1. **Column 9: Major (maximum no. of nights spent):** The place where the highest number of nights was spent by a visitor during the trip will be treated as 'major' type of stay for that visitor and the corresponding code will be recorded in this column. If same and highest number of nights were spent in more than one type of stay then the type of stays which was more expensive will be considered as the major type of stay and the second most expensive type of stay among them will be the **minor** type of stay. When the expenses are not known, likely to be the case for package trip, then the accommodation with earliest check-in time will be the major type of stay.

3.5.8.2. **Column 10: Minor (2nd maximum no. of nights spent):** The place where second highest number of nights was spent will be treated as 'minor' type of stay and the corresponding code will be recorded in this column. If there is only one type of stay during the trip, there should not be any entry in this column and a dash ('-') shall be put.

Box 1:

A person on his trip spent two nights in train journey and one night in a private guest house at destination. Here major type of stay for him/her for this trip will be 'others' (code 9) and minor type of stay will be code '2' i.e. private guest house.

Box 2:

A family during their holiday trip travelled by air from Chennai to Port Blair and stayed there in a hotel for a week and came back to UPR by air. Here major type of stay will be 'hotel' (code 1) for all the members in the trip but will have no minor type of stay and a dash ('-') is to be put against this column for all the members in the trip.

3.5.9. Column 11: No. of nights spent outside usual place of residence (including journey):

The number of nights spent by the visitor outside his/her usual place of residence from starting of the trip to the completion of the trip, including the nights spent in transit, is to be recorded here.

3.5.10. Column 12: Leading purpose for all the members performing the trip (code): If purposes for all the members in a trip are same, then that common purpose will be the leading purpose of the trip. Leading purpose of trip as a whole is that purpose without which none of the members in that trip would have undertaken the trip. This must be one of the purposes mentioned in Column 5 for a particular trip. Clearly, the leading purpose of a trip will be the same for all the members who undertook that trip. There may be exceptional situations where a purpose cannot be identified as the leading purpose. For example, there could be two or more purposes, say, pilgrimage and health, recorded for different visitors in a trip. In such a case, the leading purpose will be identified as that purpose which the informant considers to be the most important for different visitors. Code structure is as follows:

Holidaying, leisure and recreation -2 *Shopping* -7
Health & medical -6

Illustration 1: In a household, there were two overnight trips in the last 365 days. In trip 1, two members, with the intention of visiting relatives, accompanied their son, aged 24; he was on a business trip outside their UPR which the household reported as the leading purpose of the trip. The travelled by Bus for the maximum distance and used rail as the minor mode of transport. In the trip, while the parents stayed with the relatives, the son stayed in a hotel. The parents of the boy were aged 48 and 45 respectively.

In trip 2, two members of age 74 and 48 went on a pilgrimage. The travelled by rail for the maximum distance and used hired a cab as the minor mode of transport. In the trip, the stayed in a Dharmashala.

For these two trips, the entries for Columns (1) to (12) in Block 5.1 will be as follows:

srl. no. of trip	no. of hh members in the trip	srl. no. of hh member who was in that trip (as in Col 1, block 4)	age (as in Col 5, block 4)	purpose of the trip for the member (code)	type of trip (code)	mode of travel (code)		type of stay (code)		no. of nights spent outside usual place of residence (including journey)	leading purpose for all the members performing the trip (code)
						major (max. distance travelled)	minor (2 nd max. distance travelled)	major (max. no. of nights spent)	minor (2 nd max. no. of nights spent)		
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)	(12)
1	3	1	48	3	2	02	03	5	-	2	1
		2	45	3	2	02	03	5	-	2	-
		3	24	1	2	02	03	1	-	2	-
2	2	1	74	4	2	03	08	3	-	4	4
		3	48	4	2	03	08	3	-	4	-

3.5.11. **Column 13: Starting month (code):** The month of starting the trip is to be recorded against this item. Details are given in Chapter One.

The applicable codes are-

January -01,	February -02,	March -03,
April -04,	May -05,	June -06,
July -07,	August -08,	September -09,
October-10,	November -11,	December -12

3.5.12. **Column 14: Main destination (code):** *Main destination* is generally a place which is central to the decision to undertake the trip. However, if no such place can be identified by the informant, the main destination is to be taken as the place where the members spent maximum night during the trip. If the visitors spent the same number of nights in two or more places during the trip, then the main destination is that one among these places which is the farthest from the UPR of the visitor. Obviously, the main destination of a trip will be the same for all the members who undertook that trip. The codes are -

- destination within the district: 1,
- destination outside the district but within the State: 2,
- destination outside the State but within the country: 3,
- final port of departure in Indian Territory for International trip: 4;

Box 3:

Code 4 is applicable only for the domestic part of an International trip. For example, an individual staying in Jaipur is going trip to Australia by taking flight from New Delhi. Then his trip from UPR to New Delhi Airport will be the domestic part of the international trip.

3.5.13. **Column 15: if code '3' or '4' in col. 14 then destination state code/ state code of port of departure:** If the main destination of a particular trip is outside the State of origin (i.e. the State in which the household is located) then the State of the main destination is to be recorded. Once the main destination is uniquely identified, its State code is to be entered in this column. In case of an international trip, the state code of the final port of departure from the territory of India is to be recorded. The code structure is as follows-

Andhra Pradesh	....28	Karnataka	....29	Tamil Nadu	....33
Arunachal Pradesh	....12	Kerala	....32	Tripura	....16
Assam	....18	Madhya Pradesh	....23	Uttar Pradesh	....09
Bihar	....10	Maharashtra	....27	Uttarakhand	....05
Chhattisgarh	....22	Manipur	....14	West Bengal	....19

Delhi	....07	Meghalaya	....17	A & N Islands	....35
Goa	....30	Mizoram	....15	Chandigarh	....04
Gujarat	....24	Nagaland	....13	Dadra & Nagar Haveli	....26
Haryana	....06	Odisha	....21	Daman & Diu	....25
Himachal Pradesh	....02	Punjab	....03	Lakshadweep	....31
Jammu & Kashmir	....01	Rajasthan	....08	Puducherry	....34
Jharkhand	....20	Sikkim	....11	Telangana	....36
				Ladakh	....37

If the main destination covers more than one state/UT, then follow the definition of Main destination given in Chapter One: Concepts and Definitions to determine the appropriate destination state code.

3.5.14. **Total no. of trips:** This is the total number of domestic overnight trips performed by the household during last 365 days. This should match with the last serial number of the trip in Column 1.

3.5.15. Block 5.2: Particulars of overnight trips of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed by household members during last 30 days [for leading purposes business, social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.), pilgrimage & religious activities, education & training, others]

3.5.15.1. **Method of recording entries in Block 5.2:** It may be noted that in Block 5.2, details of overnight trip of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed during the last 30 days [for leading purposes of business; social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.); pilgrimage & religious activities; education & training; others] will be recorded.

The structure of both Block 5.1 and Block 5.2 is same. The column heading, method recording entries under different columns in Block 5.2 are similar to those in Block 5.1. Thus, the instructions given for Block 5.1 can be followed for filling up Block 5.2.

3.5.15.2. The following points may be noted:

(i) Reference period for recording details of trips

Block 5.1: In Block 5.1, details of overnight trips of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed during the last 365 days (for leading purposes health & medical; holidaying, leisure and recreation; and shopping) will be recorded.

Block 5.2: Details of overnight trip of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed during the last 30 days [for leading purposes business; social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.); pilgrimage & religious activities; education & training; others] will be recorded

(ii) Code structure

Code structure for all the items in Block 5.2 are same as the corresponding question in Block 5.1, **except in respect of column 12 (leading purpose for all the members performing the trip).**

For Column 12 of Block 5.1, the applicable codes are:

holidaying, leisure and recreation.....	2
health & medical.....	6
shopping.....	7

For Column 12 of Block 5.2, the applicable codes are:

business.....	1
social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.).....	3
pilgrimage & religious activities.....	4
education & training.....	6
other.....	9

3.6. Block 6.1 particulars of expenditure (Rs.) for all trips in last 365 days covered in block 5.1

3.6.0. In this block, expenditure details on each *domestic overnight trip* which are covered in Block 5.1 are to be recorded. In the schedule, provision has been made to record expenditure details of 4 trips in the 4 columns of this block. If more than 4 trips are performed by the household, then more sheets shall be added. Coverage of Tourism Expenditure are given in Chapter One. It may be noted that all the expenditure incurred and/ or to be incurred relating to the trip performed by the member (s) of the sample household during the reference period is to be included irrespective of the source of expenditure, i.e. whether the expenditure has been incurred and / or to be incurred by the sample household or not.

Box 4:

Any domestic overnight performed by the household must have positive total expenditure, but it may happen that some of the components of expenditure are nil. If no expenditure is reported in some of the items in this block, then a dash ('-') may be put.

3.6.1. **Item 1: trip serial no. [as in column 1, Block 5.1]:** The serial number of trip as provided in Column 1 of Block 5.1 is to be copied against this item.

3.6.2. Item 2: type of trip [as in column 6, Block 5.1]: The type of trip as provided in Column 6 of Block 5.1 is to be copied against this item. **If for different household members in the trip, ‘type of trip’ is different, then in this item, entry will be 1 (package).**

3.6.3. Item 3: package component: This has already been described under ‘type of trip’ in Block 5.1. A particular trip may have both package and non-package components. For example, for a particular trip a package may be availed of for transport, breakfast and sightseeing for which separate break-up may or may not be available. The lump-sum expenditure incurred for this package is to be included against this item for each trip.

3.6.3.1. Item 3.1: transport: If *transport* is a part of the package for a particular trip, then code ‘1’ will be recorded, otherwise code ‘2’ will be recorded.

3.6.3.2. Item 3.2: accommodation: If *accommodation* is a part of the package for a particular trip, then code ‘1’ will be recorded, otherwise code ‘2’ will be recorded.

3.6.3.3. Item 3.3: meals/food: If *meals/food* is a part of the package for a particular trip, then code ‘1’ will be recorded, otherwise code ‘2’ will be recorded.

3.6.3.4. Item 3.4: sightseeing and entertainment: If *sightseeing and entertainment* is a part of the package for a particular trip, then code ‘1’ will be recorded, otherwise code ‘2’ will be recorded.

3.6.4. Non-package component: All expenditure, which do not come under package component related to a trip are to be recorded here item-wise. Sometimes, the expenditure related to transport, accommodation, meals, entertainment, and sightseeing etc., may be partly covered in the package component. In such situation, the non-package component of such expenditure should be recorded under the non-package component in these blocks. In most cases, there will be non-package component for a trip. If a trip does not have any expenditure for non-package component then appropriate remarks may be given in the remarks block of this Schedule.

3.6.4.1. Item 4: Accommodation: This is same as the *type of stay* mentioned in columns 9 & 10 of Block 5.1. The expenditure incurred on accommodation related to a trip will be reported against relevant type of accommodation. The types of accommodation on which, expenditure if incurred related to the trip will be recorded are as follows:

- **Item 4.1: Hotel**
- **Item 4.2: Guest house**
- **Item 4.3: Dharamshala**
- **Item 4.4: Rented house**
- **Item 4.5: Homestay**
- **Item 4.6: Others**

It may be noted that expenditure relating to the trip for any type of accommodation will not include separate cost of additional guest services which are not included in the accommodation charge. If during the trip the household member stayed in the place of friends & relatives but payment was made for such stay for the trip then the expenditure for this type of accommodation will be recorded in 'rented house'.

3.6.4.1.1. **Item 4.0: Sub-total (4.1 to 4.6):** The total of all entries in 4.1 to 4.6 is to be recorded against this item.

3.6.4.2. **Item 5: Food & drink:** If any non-package expenditure relating to the trip on food & drink was paid/payable by the household or by others relating to the trip, the same will be recorded under this item. Consider only those expenses on food and drink which are for immediate consumption during the trip. These food and drink items may be consumed as breakfast, lunch, tiffin, dinner, etc. The word 'drink' includes water, *lassi*, milk, alcohol, and other beverages.

3.6.4.2.1. **Item 5.1: In the accommodation unit:** This includes the expenditure incurred on purchase of food and drinks in the accommodation units where the household members stay during the trip.

3.6.4.2.2. **Item 5.2: Outside accommodation unit and during journey and transit:** This includes the expenditure incurred on purchase of food and drinks outside the accommodation units where the household members stay during the trip, or during transit or journey time.

3.6.4.2.3. **Item 5.0: Sub-total (5.1 to 5.2):** The total of all entries in items 5.1 to 5.2 is to be recorded against this item.

3.6.4.3. **Item 6: Transport:** The items 6.1 to 6.8 are related to the expenditure on various forms of transport used for movement during a particular trip.

- **Item 6.1 :railways**
- **Item 6.2: public transport for road journey**
- **Item 6.3: own road transport (including fuel, driver's cost, repair & maintenance, if any)**
- **Item 6.4: rental/ hiring of vehicle for road journey**
- **Item 6.5: Water transport**
- **Item 6.6: Air transport**
- **Item 6.7: travel agency services/tour operators**
- **Item 6.8: others and supporting services**

3.6.4.3.1. **Item 6.1: Railways:** All expenditure on railway fare, including super fast charges, reservation charges, *tatkal* charges, etc., paid to railway authorities is to be recorded against this item. Amount paid to travel agencies, etc., for booking railway tickets is not to be recorded here. This expenditure is to be recorded against Item 6.7. If the travel is made by hired railway coach/carriage/saloon, the cost of such travel should come here. In some places the Railways may provide rail-cum-road services which are included in the total payment to be made to the railway authorities. In such cases, the entire amount paid to the railways should be recorded against Item 6.1. Expenditure towards travelling by toy train will come under this category provided it is necessary for travelling; otherwise if it is for joyride, the corresponding expenditure should be recorded against Item 8.1.

3.6.4.3.2. **Item 6.2: Public transport for road journey including tonga, rickshaw, camel-cart etc.:** Public transport is a shared passenger-transport service which is available for use by the general public, as distinct from modes such as taxicab, carpooling or hired buses. Public transport for road journey includes buses, trams, etc. This will also include *animal driven transport* such as horse-carts (*tongas*), bullock-carts, camel-carts, etc.

3.6.4.3.3. **Item 6.3: Own road transport including fuel, driver's cost, repair & maintenance if any:** Expenditure towards cost of fuel, engagement of drivers, and repair and maintenance of vehicle in case of own transport is also to be included.

3.6.4.3.4. **Item 6.4: Rental/hiring of vehicle for road journey:** This includes expenditure on hired motorised or non-motorised road transport like *bicycle, two-wheeler, rickshaw, auto rickshaw, taxi, car/jeep, tractor/truck, animal driven transport*, etc.). The transport equipment must be hired with or without the services of the operator (driver). If it is shared with any other person(s) who is/are not member(s) of the trip, except for the driver and helper, then only the part of the expenditure related to member(s) of the trip should be considered. If the transport equipment is hired without fuel and/or operator services, then expenditure towards cost of fuel, engagement of driver, etc. should also be recorded here.

3.6.4.3.5. **Item 6.5: Water transport (ship/boat/ferry/cruise, etc.):** This includes expenditure on water transport by ship/steamer/ boat / catamaran, etc. Note that availing oneself of water transport for the purpose of joyride, water sports, river rafting, yachting, water-biking, adventure, etc. will not come under this item, instead such expenditure will be recorded against Item 8.1.

3.6.4.3.6. **Item 6.6: Air transport (scheduled/chartered/ private flights, helicopter, etc.):** This includes expenditure on air transport by flights/helicopter, etc. Note that availing air transport for the purpose of adventure sport like ballooning, Para-gliding, Para-sailing, etc. will not come under this item. All payments made to airlines relating to transport tax, insurance, passenger tax, etc. should also be recorded here.

3.6.4.3.7. Item 6.7: Travel agency services/tour operators: Expenditure relating to the services of travel agencies used for the trip will be considered here. They play the role of providing information and access to the visitor in the purchase of certain services. Tour operators render services that combine one or more chargeable travel services (e.g., transport, accommodation, meals, entertainment, and sightseeing) and sell them through travel agencies or directly to final consumers. The expenditure incurred for booking of travel services like transport, accommodation, etc., including the commission levied by travel agencies for selling the package tours to the visitors is to be considered here. It may be noted that only the cost of booking these services through travel agencies/tour operators related to a trip should come here. Tour operator also includes online service providers, such as, Make my Trip, Yatra.com, expedia.co.in, etc.

Box 5:

1. A person booked air-ticket online, through Yatra.com for his trip. Total fare is Rs. 8000. In the break-up of the expenditure, service charge for Yatra.com is mentioned as Rs. 250. Then entry against item 6.6 (air) will be Rs. 7750 and in item 6.7 Rs. 250 for that trip.
2. A family of three went to Rajasthan with Kundu Travels. They made a one time payment (for food, accommodation, transport and sight-seeing) of Rs. 30000 to the tour operator. Rs. 30000 will be reported against item 3 (Package component) along with code 1 in items 3.1-3.4 for that trip.

3.6.4.3.8. Item 6.8: Others and supporting services: This category includes expenditure on other motorised and non-motorised modes of transport not included elsewhere related to a trip like transport by animal like horseback, pony-back, etc; transport by humans such as *palki* (palanquin), *doli* carriages and transport by cable car/ropeway, etc.

3.6.4.3.9. Item 6.0: Sub-total (6.1 to 6.8): The total of all entries in 6.1 to 6.8 is to be recorded against this item.

3.6.4.4. Item 7: Shopping: Items 7.01 to 7.11 relate to purchase of any consumer good relating to the trip on shopping. Shopping relate to purchase of any consumer good for own consumption or for gifts but not for resale or for productive purposes. The consumption may be during the trip or after the trip but not before the trip. This purchase may be made before, during or after the trip but it must be related to that trip.

3.6.4.4.1. Item 7.01: Clothing and garments: This includes expenditure on clothes, viz. *dhoti*, *sari*, *chaddar*, *dupatta*, *shawl*, *lungi*, etc; readymade garments like shirt, trousers, pyjama, ladies suit, coats etc.; knitted garments like sweater, pullover, cardigan, etc; bed sheet, bed cover, blanket, pillow, quilts etc; socks, gloves, caps, knitting wool, towel and similar items.

3.6.4.4.2. **Item 7.02: Processed food (for future consumption):** This item includes expenditure incurred on tea, coffee, beverages like cold drinks, fruit juices, etc; bakery products like biscuits, cake, pastry, etc.; salted refreshment, prepared sweets, pickle, sauce, jam, jelly etc., and similar items that are purchased during the trip for future consumption.

3.6.4.4.3. **Item 7.03:: Alcohol & tobacco products (for future consumption):** This item includes expenditure incurred on all kinds of alcoholic drinks and tobacco products like beer, foreign liquors, country liquors, toddy etc. and *pan, supari, lime, katha, bidi, cigarette, gutkha, pan masala*, etc. Alcohol for immediate consumption will not be covered here.

3.6.4.4.4. **Item 7.04: Travel related consumer goods:** Expenditure incurred on items like suitcases, trunk, hand bag, other travel goods; spectacles, sunglasses, pen, lock, umbrella, radio, ipod, e-book, mobile phone, torch, batteries, etc.; photographic equipment like camera, film, CD, tripod, etc.; sports items, toys, etc. (except footwear) will be covered under this item. Expenditure incurred during the trip on purchasing consumer durable goods like cars, computers, etc. as well paintings, works of art, etc. if not purchased for productive purposes' will be considered. However, expenditure on purchase of housing, real estate will be excluded.

3.6.4.4.5. **Item 7.05: Footwear:** All types of footwear will be covered under this item.

3.6.4.4.6. **Item 7.06: Toiletries:** All types of toiletries like toilet soap, washing soap, washing powder, hair oil, shampoo, cosmetics; tooth paste, tooth brush, tooth powder; talcum powder, face cream, deodorants, perfume, etc.; shaving equipments like shaving blade, shaving stick, razor, shaving cream, aftershave lotion, etc. and similar items will be covered under this item.

3.6.4.4.7. **Item 7.07: Gems and jewellery:** All expenses on gems and on jewellery, irrespective of their unit cost, incurred during or for the trip are to be covered here.

3.6.4.4.8. **Item 7.08: Books, journals, magazines, stationery, etc:** Expenditure on books, magazines, newspaper, library and other stationery purchased for or during the trip is to be recorded here.

3.6.4.4.9. **Item 7.10: Memento, souvenir, etc.:** Expenditure on all types of mementos or handicrafts or souvenir purchased in the trip (for own use or for gift purpose) are to be covered here. This item is different from travel related consumer goods in the sense that these are not consumed but preserved as reminiscence of the trip.

3.6.4.4.10. **Item 7.11: Others:** All expenses on shopping not mentioned in the items 7.01 to 7.08 and 7.10 will be reported here.

3.6.4.4.11. **Item 7.00: Sub-total (7.01 to 7.11):** The total of all entries in 7.01 to 7.11 is to be recorded against this item.

3.6.4.5. Item 8: Recreation, religious, cultural & sporting and health related activities: Expenditure on different recreational, religious, cultural and sporting activities during the trip are to be recorded irrespective of whether the expenditure was incurred before, during or after the trip.

3.6.4.5.1. Item 8.1: cinema, theatre, amusement, personal care like sauna, massaging, etc.: This includes entry fees and all other incidental expenditure like joyrides, etc. incurred on cinema, theatre, amusement park, juggling show, magic show, circus etc., during a trip.

3.6.4.5.2. Item 8.2: entry fee, other expenses to religious sites like darshan, offerings, priest fee etc.: This includes *darshan* fees, *dakshina* for priests, expenditure on offerings, etc. It does not include donation to religious trusts, alms, etc. at those religious places.

3.6.4.5.3. Item 8.3: entry fee to and other expenses at cultural sites: This includes entry fees to various archaeological sites, museums, historical places, etc. Expenditure on entry tickets for light and sound shows, etc. at various cultural sites will also be covered.

3.6.4.5.4. Item 8.4: Sporting activities: This includes entry fees or tickets for watching sporting events both outdoor and indoor, like football, cricket, table tennis, etc. Expenditure for participating in adventure sports like para-gliding, rafting, rock climbing etc. will also be included here.

3.6.4.5.5. Item 8.5: Medical and health related activities: All medicine and health-related items, whether of regular use or purchased as a precautionary measure for the trip or purchased on the advice of medical practitioners during the trip, are to be covered here. Further, all expenditure, whether actually paid / payable by the household or directly paid / reimbursed by Government or other agencies (including medical insurance companies), are to be recorded here.

- **Item 8.5.1: Medicine:** All medicines, irrespective of their type - allopathic, homeopathic, ayurvedic and other Indian system of medicines, etc. - of regular use or purchased as a precautionary measure for the trip or purchased on advice of medical practitioners during the trip are to be covered.
- **Item 8.5.2: Medical accessories:** Expenditure made for the trip or during the trip on all types of medical accessories like knee caps, crutches, slings, bandages, cotton wool, Jaipur foot, spectacles, hearing aid, etc., are to be covered here.
- **Item 8.5.3: Other health related services:** The expenses on medical tests and investigations, vaccination, immunisation, health check-up, etc., required for or during the trip are also to be included here. If a person made expenditure on sauna bath, massaging, steam bath, etc. under medical advice during a trip, then such expenditure

should also be reported here. Fees to the doctors or similar services are also to be covered here.

If some expenses are made on services such as sauna bath, massaging, steam bath, etc., taken for personal recreation then those are to be recorded under item 8.1

- **Item 8.5.0: Sub-total [8.5.1 to 8.5.3]:** The total of all entries in 8.5.1 to 8.5.3 is to be recorded against this item.

3.6.4.5.6. **Item 8.0: Sub-total [8.1 + 8.2 + 8.3 + 8.4 + 8.5.0]:** The total of all entries in 8.1 to 8.4 and 8.5.0 is to be recorded against this item.

3.6.4.6. **Item 9: Others:** All other expenditure not indicated elsewhere, e.g. payment made to tourist guide, porter charges, travel insurance, wi-fi charges, etc. will come under this item.

3.6.4.7. **Item 10: Sub-total (4.0 +5.0+ 6.0+7.00+8.0+9):** The total of all entries in 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.00, 8.0 and 9 is to be recorded against this item. This gives the total of the expenditure on non-package component related to the trip.

3.6.4.8. **Item 11: Total [3+10]:** The total of entries in 3 and 10 is to be recorded against this item. This gives the total of expenditure on both package and non-package component related to the trip.

Note: Any domestic overnight trip performed by the household, must have positive total expenditure, but it may happen that some of the components of expenditure are nil. If no expenditure is reported in any of items 4-9, then a dash ('-') may be put.

3.6.4.9. **Item 12: whether any reimbursement/direct payment was made by Government organisation (like, Central Government, State Government, Local Bodies, Public Sector Undertakings, Organisation wholly funded by government) for this trip (code)**

3.6.4.9.1. Expenditure on a particular trip may be partially or fully reimbursed or directly paid by Government, by some other agency/organisation or by others (e.g. non-household members). For example, LTC /LTA are given by employers like, Government, private organisations, banks, insurance companies like LIC, GIC, and travelling fares and accommodation costs paid by organisers of seminars, conferences, etc.

Information on whether reimbursement/direct payment was made by Government organisation (like, Central Government, State Government, Local Bodies, Public Sector Undertakings, Organisation wholly funded by government) for this trip, will be recorded from the code list given below:

yes and amount known1
 yes and amount not known2
 no3

3.6.4.10. **Item 13: If code '1' in item 12, amount (Rs.) paid/ reimbursed:** If the amount of reimbursement/direct payment made by Government organisation is known (i.e. code 1 in Item 12) for this trip the same will be recorded here in whole number of rupees.

3.6.4.11. **Item 14: Whether any reimbursement/direct payment was made by other organisation/ institution/ non-household members but not covered in item 12 (code)**

If any reimbursement/direct payment was made by other organisations/institutions (other than Government organisation, like, Central Government, State Government, Local Bodies, Public Sector Undertakings, Organisations wholly funded by government) or by non-household members for this trip, will be recorded from the code list given below:

yes and amount known1
 yes and amount not known2
 no3

Other organisations/institutions will include, International Bodies, private universities, NGOs etc.

3.6.4.12. **Item 15: If code '1' in item 14, amount (Rs.) paid/ reimbursed:** If the amount of reimbursement/direct payment made by other organisations/institutions is known (i.e., if entry is 1 in Item 14) the same will be recorded here in whole number of rupees.

Some examples in this regard are given in the box below.

Box 6:

- Expenditure on trip of a Govt. employee who is on official tour is reimbursed by the Government;
- Railway fare for appearing at an interview conducted by UPSC is reimbursed to the interviewee by the Government of India;
- Expenditure incurred by the Government on a trip of an honorary chairperson/member of a Government Committee to attend Committee meetings.
- Reimbursement by the govt. /PSUs for trips of the family members of their employees under LTC/LTA schemes.

3.6.4.13. **Item 16: Details of other services availed for the trip**

This is for collection of information on whether the household used some of the specified services for that trip. Such services may be used for any part of the trip and by any of the

household members in that trip. Information on details of services availed for the trip will be recorded in Items 16.1 to 16.5. The descriptions of the items are given below:

- **Item 16.1: Booked accommodation/ transport/ food, etc. through tour operator using internet**
- **Item 16.2: Booked accommodation/ transport/ food, etc. through tour operator without using internet**
- **Item 16.3: Booked accommodation/ transport/ food, etc. directly using internet**
- **Item 16.4: Booked accommodation/ transport/ food, etc. directly without using internet**
- **Item 16.5: Services of tour guide**

If a specific services as given in Items 16.1 to 16.5 are used, code 1 will be recorded against that item, else 2 will be recorded.

If the household has booked accommodation/transport/food, etc., through tour operator using internet then code 1 will be recorded in Item 16.1. Tour operators render services that combine one or more chargeable travel services (e.g., transport, accommodation, meals, entertainment, and sightseeing) and sell them through travel agencies or directly to final consumers.

Similarly, if booked accommodation/ transport/ food/etc., through tour operator without using internet then code 1 will be recorded in Item 16.2.

If service of tour operator was not used but booked accommodation/ transport/ food/etc., directly using internet, then code 1 will be recorded in Item 16.3 and if services of tour operator was not used but booked accommodation/ transport/ food/etc., directly without using internet, then code 1 will be recorded in Item 16.4. If the services of tour guide was used in any part of the trip then code 1 will be recorded in Item 16.5.

3.6.4.14. **Item 17:** If for the trip any of accommodation/ transport/ food, etc., was booked through tour operator using internet or without using internet, i.e., if entry is 1 in either Item 16.1 or 16.2 then Items 17.1 to 17.4 will be used to collect information to have some idea about whether the household was satisfied with the specific service (services of accommodation, food, transport and other services.) for which booking was made through tour operator. The descriptions of Items 17.1 to 17.4 are given below.

- **Item 17.1: whether satisfied with the accommodation services (yes -1, no -2, did not use-9)**
- **Item 17.2: whether satisfied with the food services (yes -1, no -2, did not use-9)**
- **Item 17.3: whether satisfied with the transport services (yes -1, no -2, did not use-9)**
- **Item 17.4: whether satisfied with the other services (yes -1, no -2, did not use-9)**

If the household was satisfied with services, code 1 will be recorded. If the household was not satisfied with the services, then code 2 will be recorded. If the specific service was not availed from the tour operator, then code 9 will be recorded.

3.6.4.15. Item 18: For entry 1 in 16.5, whether satisfied with the services of tour guide(s): Item 18 will be filled in for those household who have used the services of tour guide during the trip. If the services of the tour guide was satisfactory, code 1 will be recorded, else code 2 will be recorded.

3.6.5. Block 6.2: particulars of expenditure (Rs.) for all trips in last 30 days covered in block 5.2

3.6.5.1. Method of recording entries in Block 6.2: It may be noted that in Block 6.2, expenditure details of overnight trip of duration less than or equal to 180 days completed during the last 30 days [for leading purposes of business; social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.); pilgrimage & religious activities; education & training; others] will be recorded.

The structure of both Block 6.1 and Block 6.2 is same. The item description and method recording entries against different Items in Block 6.2 are similar to those in Block 6.1. Thus, the instructions given for Block 6.1 can be followed for filling up Block 6.2.

3.7. Block 7: Particulars and expenditure (Rs.) of same-day trips completed by household members during last 30 days

3.7.0. In this block all particulars and expenditure details of the same-day trips completed in the last 30 days by the household for leading purposes of *business; holidaying, leisure and recreation; social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.); pilgrimage & religious activities; education & training; health & medical; shopping; others* are to be recorded. ***In this block, one row is to be used for a particular same-day trip.*** Definition of same-day trip is provided in Chapter One.

3.7.1. Column 1: Srl. no. of trip: A running serial number will be given in this column for each same-day trip undertaken by any of the household members during last 30 days. As in Block 5.1/ Block 5.2, trips should be serialised commencing from the latest completed trip.

3.7.2. Column 2: No. of hh members in the trip: Total number of household members who participated in the trip is to be recorded here.

3.7.3. Column 3: Leading purpose for all the members performing the trip (code): The concepts of leading purpose of trip is same as that used in the context of domestic overnight trip. The leading purpose of the trip will be ascertained the leading purpose for the trip will be selected for each trip from among the following list.

business.....	1
holidaying, leisure and recreation.....	2
social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.).....	3
pilgrimage & religious activities	4
education & training.....	5
health & medical	6
shopping.....	7
others-.....	9

3.7.4. **Expenditure:** The coverage and method of recording tourism expenditure is given in Chapter One.

3.7.4.1. **Column 4: Package:** The coverage and method of recording tourism expenditure on package component of the trip as given in *Item 3* of Block 6.1 may be followed for recording the expenditure on package component of the domestic same-day trip.

3.7.4.2. **Non-package:** All expenditure, which do not come under package component related to a domestic same-daytrip are to be recorded here item-wise in **Columns 5-11** under the following broad heads.

- **Columns 5: accommodation:** Similar to item 4 in Block 6.1.
- **Columns 6: food & drink:** Similar to item 5 in Block 6.1.
- **Columns 7: transport:** Similar to item 6 in Block 6.1.
- **Columns 8: shopping:** Similar to item 7 in Block 6.1.
- **Columns 9: recreation, religious, cultural and sporting:** This column is similar to a combination of items 8.1-8.4 in Block 6.1.
- **Columns 10: health related (medicine, medical accessories, other health related services)medical:** Similar to item 8.5 in Block 6.1.
- **Columns 11: others:** Similar to item 9 in Block 6.1.
- **Columns 12: subtotal (col. 5 to col. 11):** This is the subtotal of expenditure reported in Column 5 to Column 12 for a particular same-day trip.

3.7.4.3. **Columns 13: total (col. 4+ col. 12):** This is the total of expenditure reported in Column 4 and Column 12 for a particular same-day trip.

Box 7:

Any same-daytrip performed by the household must have positive total expenditure, but it may happen that some of the components of expenditure are nil. If no expenditure is reported in any of columns 4-11, then a dash ('-') may be put. If the trip did not include any expenditure on non-package component, remark may be given in the remarks block.

3.7.5. Columns 14 to 23: Details of other services availed for the trip with leading purposes 'holidaying, leisure and recreation' or 'pilgrimage & religious activities'.

In this columns some details of other services availed for the trip with leading purposes 'holidaying, leisure and recreation' or 'pilgrimage & religious activities' will be recorded., i.e., columns 14 to 23 will relate to those trips with code 2 or 4 in column 3. The descriptions of the columns are similar to those of the corresponding items 16.1 to 16.5, 17.1 to 17.4 and 18 of block 6.1. For making entry in these columns, the guidelines given in the respective items (Items 16.1 to 16.5, 17.1 to 17.4 and 18) of Block 6.1 may be followed.

3.8. Block 8: Particulars and expenditure (Rs.) of domestic overnight trips of duration of more than 180 days but less than or equal to 365 days, completed by household members during last 365 days

3.8.0. In this block particulars and expenditure details of domestic overnight trips of duration of more than 180 days but less than or equal to 365 days, completed by household members during last 365 days will be recorded. This block will cover the trips for the leading purposes of *business; holidaying, leisure and recreation; social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.); pilgrimage & religious activities; education & training; health & medical; shopping; others*] are to be recorded. ***In this block, one row is to be used for a particular a domestic overnight trip.*** Definition of domestic overnight trip is provided in Chapter One.

3.8.1. **Column 1: Srl. no. of trip:** A running serial number will be given in this column for each domestic overnight trip for duration of more than 180 days but less than or equal to 365 days, completed by household members during last 365 days. Entry will be made starting with the latest completed trip. Thus the trip completed last is to be given serial number 1, the trip completed just before trip 1 is to be given serial number 2 and so on.

3.8.2. **Column 2: No. of hh members in the trip:** Total number of household members who participated in the trip is to be recorded here.

3.8.3. **Column 3: Leading purpose for all the members performing the trip (code):** The concepts of leading purpose of trip is same as that used in the context of domestic overnight trip. The leading purpose of the trip will be ascertained the leading purpose for the trip will be selected for each trip from among the following list.

business.....	1
holidaying, leisure and recreation.....	2
social (including visiting friends and relatives, attending marriages, etc.).....	3
pilgrimage & religious activities	4
education & training.....	5
health & medical	6
shopping.....	7
others-.....	9

3.8.4. Column 4: Total expenditure: Expenditure (combining both package and non-package components) for each of the trips in this Block will be recorded in this column. The coverage and method of recording tourism expenditure is given in Chapter One.

3.8.5. Column 5: no. of nights spent outside usual place of residence (UPR) (including journey): If all the members in the trip spent equal number of nights outside the usual place of residence then it will be recorded in this Column. If in a trip there were more than one member and number of nights spent were different for different members, then report the number of nights which was the highest among those members.

3.8.6. Columns 6 to 15: Details of other services availed for the trip: In this columns some details of other services availed for the trip will be recorded. The descriptions of the columns are similar to those of the corresponding items 16.1 to 16.5, 17.1 to 17.4 and 18 of block 6.1. For making entry in these columns, the guidelines given in the respective items (Items 16.1 to 16.5, 17.1 to 17.4 and 18) of Block 6.1 may be followed.

3.9: Block 9: Remarks by investigator (FI/JSO)

3.9.0 In this block, relevant remarks/comments by investigators will be given regarding operational problems of data collection and his/ her observations on any special feature that he/ she comes across while canvassing the Schedule. He/ She also should explain the abnormal entries (if any) in the Schedule.

3.10: Block 10: Comments by SSOs

3.10.0 In this Block, relevant remarks/comments by SSOs will be given with regard to various stages supervision and scrutiny of the Schedule.

Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs)

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
1.	general	-	-	<p>A erstwhile female member of a selected household had undertaken overnight trip in last 365 days for leading purpose 'shopping'.</p> <p>She was not a member of the household as on the date of survey as she married and left the household. Whether trips performed by her would be considered as trip for the selected household?</p>	<p>Trip of persons who are household members as on date of survey only will be considered.</p>
2.	general	-	-	<p>A fisherman from Rameshwaram went into deep sea to catch fish and returned to his UPR after 5 days. Whether such movements shall be considered as overnight trips?</p>	<p>Such movement will not be an overnight trip.</p>
3.	general	-	-	<p>A railway driver on his duty has to move out of his UPR frequently to different places, spending nights at carriage/guest house, etc. Whether such movements will be treated as overnight trips?</p>	<p>Such movements will not be considered as trips.</p> <p>All movements of persons, whose nature of work/job is regular touring outside their UPR to different places, like, mobile hawkers, on-board staff of airlines /ship/ railways or of buses or of hired taxis and other public transports, etc. would not be considered as trips (overnight or same-day).</p>

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
4.	general	-		With reference to Para 1.5.23 (ii) of Chapter 1, which all trips can be termed as 'visiting second home' in the context of purposes of trips: holidaying, leisure and recreation?	A Second home in the context of the survey is an accommodation unit owned and possessed by one of the household members which is different from the residence in which they are enumerated for the survey and located outside their usual place of residence. Farm houses, cabins, etc. owned by household and used generally for their own holidaying, recreation, etc. are examples of second home in the context of the survey. Visits made by the household member(s) to such second homes for the holidaying, leisure and recreation can be included in 'visiting second home' for the purpose of the survey on Domestic Tourism Expenditure.
5.	4	8	-	In some states telephone bills and electricity bills are issued for a period of two months. How to report such expenditure made by households against this item?	In such cases, expenditure needs to be apportioned by dividing it by the number of months for which such bills are issued and paid.
6.	5.1/5.2	general	-	If a person went to an international trip and prior to proceeding for the trip some expenditure were made by him in making preparation for the trip, whether such expenditure will be considered for schedule?	Expenditure on services like transport, accommodation, medical insurance, visa fees and sightseeing which were received in the foreign

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
					countries is not to be considered. However, expenditure on food, shopping items, medicines etc. relating to trip, which were purchased in India, are to be considered.
7.	5.1	general	-	The block is also to be filled in for the domestic part of an international (foreign) trip. Should the domestic part fulfil all the characteristics of an overnight trip?	The entire trip along with the domestic part should be considered for deciding whether the trip is overnight or not.
8.	5.1/5.2	-	5	What 'purpose' code is to be given for a person accompanying a patient to a hospital?	Code '9' for 'others' shall be given.
9.	5.2	-	5	Suppose a lady member of household had undertaken trip to her mother's place for delivery of her child, then which code should be reported against this item?(purpose of trip)	Code '3' for 'social' shall be given. In Block 5.2, such trips will be under coverage of the survey only if the duration of the trip is less than or equal to 180 days and the trip was completed during the 30 days preceding the date of survey.
10.	5.1/5.2	-	6	The respondent household A had performed overnight trip along with another household B in which household B (not a professional tour operator) had organized the trip and the household A only made lump sum payment for the same. Will this be considered as package trip for household A?	It shall not be considered as package trip.

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
11.	5.1/5.2	-	7, 8	If the movement within a big town or village (by any mode) is a part of the total travel in a trip, whether it should be taken as distance travelled for the purpose of mode of travel in Block 5.1 & 5.2?	Yes, if such movements are part of trip, as per instruction.
12.	5.1/5.2	-	9	Mr. X travelled to his native place and stayed there for 2 days in his own house which is otherwise kept vacant or locked. What code is to be recorded?	Code '9' may be recorded.
13.	5.1/5.2	-	9	A patient admitted in a hospital in ICU unit for 5 days what code should be given?	Others (code '9') will be entered.
14.	5.1/5.2	-	9,10	If an investigator stayed 5 nights at Village Pradhan's house during the survey, what code will be recorded?	If he had paid for his stay then code will be '4' (rented house) otherwise code 9 will be recorded.
15.	5.1/5.2	-	9,10	When a member walked throughout the night on a pilgrimage trip and availed no accommodation, what code to be entered?	Code '9' - others.
16.	5.1/5.2	-	11	If the duration of the trip for leading purpose 'health and medical' is 120 days (including journey) in which only 1 day falls in the reference period of the last 365 days, whether this will be taken as overnight trip and what will be the number of nights spent outside UPR?	Yes and number of night spent will be 120. All the particulars and expenditure details relating to the trip of duration of 120 days shall be recorded.
17.	5.2	-	5 & 12	A pregnant woman undertook a trip to her parents' house for taking rest on the advice of a doctor. What will be the purpose of the trip?	Since the purpose of the trip of the is to stay with her parents and taking rest, it will be a trip with

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
					purpose 'social'.
18.	5.1/5.2	-	12	<p>'A', along with his family was on a trip to visit a place 'X'. The leading purpose is business meeting of 'A', whereas for other members it is pleasure trip. What is the leading purpose of trip in the following cases:</p> <p>1) Just before start of the journey 'A' was informed about the cancellation of meeting for which purpose the trip was planned. Not to disappoint his family, 'A' along with family visited the place 'X'.</p> <p>2) During the journey A is communicated about the cancellation of the meeting.</p>	<p>1) The leading purpose of the trip is 'holidaying, leisure and recreation'.</p> <p>2) The leading purpose of the trip is 'business' as the trip was undertaken to attend the meeting. Even though the meeting was cancelled, the household would undertake the trip because of the scheduled meeting.</p>
19.	5.1/5.2	-	11, 14, 15	<p>Someone came from Shillong to Kolkata by air, to catch an International Flight from Kolkata airport for his International trip. His total duration of the trip, including the International part, was 10 nights including his journey. But he stayed only one night in Kolkata. What will be the entry in cols. 11, 14 and 15 respectively?</p>	<p>Entry in col. 11 will be '10' i.e. total duration of the trip.</p> <p>Code in col. 14 will be '4'.</p> <p>Entry in col. 15 in this case will be '19' (West Bengal), but not '17' (Meghalaya) since he finally left from Kolkata air port.</p>
20.	6.1/6.2	general	-	<p>A household, when on a trip to a marriage ceremony of a relative, had given some money to the family as monetary help for the marriage. Will this expenditure to be included in Bl. 6.1/6.2?</p>	<p>No, such cash assistance or transfer amount should not be included.</p>

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
21.	6.1/6.2	general	-	A person has incurred expenditure on getting passport and visa for undertaking an international trip. Whether the expenditure on passport and visa incurred will be included in the domestic tourism expenditure?	No. Such expenditure will not be considered for inclusion in domestic tourism expenditure as they were for availing services for the international part of the trip
22.	6.1/6.2	general	-	For a trip one household is able to report the lump sum expenditure of the trip or only the break-up of expenditure on major heads like say, 'accommodation', 'food & drink', 'transport', 'shopping', 'recreation, religious, cultural, sporting and health-related activities', etc. . Detailed item-wise break up on these major heads are not available. How to report expenditure in such situations.	In this round, expenditure on each of the detailed items on the major heads will be reported in Block 6.1/6.2. Deep probing may be done to obtain the item-wise expenditure for the corresponding major heads, like, 'accommodation', 'food & drink', 'transport', 'shopping', 'recreation, religious, cultural, sporting and health-related activities', etc.
23.	6.1/6.2	general	-	A household during trip of 4 months also solemnizes marriage of their daughter. Whether all expenditure on marriage incurred is also to be considered in total expenditure of the trip?	Yes. The expenditure to be recorded in different items of the block 6.1/6.2. However, expenditure related to transportation/hired accommodation of non-household members will not be included.
24.	6.1/6.2	general	-	Three persons from the same household of Dibrugarh undertook overnight trip for treatment of one of them. After two days two persons came back leaving the patient in hospital at Kolkata. What	Total expenditure made by the household on the two members completing the trip should only be considered.

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
				will be the entry for expenditure of the trip of the two persons who came back within reference period? The patient did not come within the reference period.	
25.	6.1/6.2	general		A household planned a trip, booked hotel, purchased reserved train ticket but the tour was postponed. They conducted the trip after a week of postponement with fresh booking of hotels and again got reserved ticket. Where the expenditure incurred on previous booking will be entered?	The expenditure incurred with respect to the journey which was not at all performed will be out of survey coverage.
26.	6.1/6.2	general		While booking an air ticket for a trip, the airlines also gave a free ticket as an offer which was also utilised by the selected household during the reference period for another trip. In such case, how to record the entries towards airfare for both the trips?	In such case, the entire airfare paid is to be reported for the first trip. For the other trip in which the ticket from the free offer was used, no imputation will be made for the airfare.
27.	6.1/6.2	general	-	Husband and wife together went to wife's maternal place outside UPR. Husband returned on the same-day but wife stayed there for 3 days. During journey, they purchased sweets amounting Rs. 100/-. Will this expenditure be recorded in block 6.2 or block 7?	Trip will be different for husband (same-day) and wife (overnight). In such case the common expenditure may be considered in overnight trips, i.e. in Block 6.2.
28.	6.1/6.2	general	-	A tourist paid cash gift to a child of the host household, whether this will be counted as expenditure done by tourist or not?	Cash gift shall not be considered as trip expenditure.
29.	6.1/6.2	general	-	Where entry of expenditure for a trip completed to attend a "3	Expenditure related to accommodation, food &

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
				months course on education” is to be recorded as there seems no provision to report expenditure on fees, books, stationary etc. for educational trip?	drink, transport, etc. are to be reported against respective items. Expenditure on books, stationary is to be reported in item 7.08, etc. Expenditure on course fee should not be reported under Tourism Expenditure
30.	6.1/6.2	general	-	The UPR of Mr. X is in Lucknow. He commutes daily to Kanpur for work. However, on 06.7.2014, he had gone to Allahabad in connection with the marriage of his niece after attending the office. On 08.7.2014, he returned to his home after attending his office in Kanpur on 08.7.2014. Whether expenditure incurred on transport from Lucknow to Kanpur and Kanpur to Lucknow in this case, will be included in Block 6.1/6.2?	Yes. In this case, taking his movement from UPR and back to UPR for the purpose of attending the marriage will be taken as expenditure for trip.
31.	6.1/6.2	5.1/5.2	-	A person on an overnight trip visited his friend and took food from his friend’s house. Whether, imputed expenditure on food will be considered for reporting?	No imputation will be made for food taken as an invitee at the friend’s house during trip.
32.	6.1/6.2	5.1/5.2	-	A person from the selected household accompanied the <i>barat</i> and stayed for night there. His expenditure, including transportation, food and stay was made by the host (a non-household member).	Tourism expenditure will be collected from the household that undertook the trip irrespective of whether the expenditure is borne by them or by some other agency/ household on their behalf. When the

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
				How the expenditure will be reported for the trip of the member of the selected household.	actual expenditure figures and break-ups are not available, the imputed expenditure will be collected from the selected household. No imputation for food served by the host as part of the ceremony will be made as it will be treated as food taken as an invitee.
33.	6.1/6.2	5.2	-	A family while on journey to visit a place, consumes food prepared at home, where the expenditure on food will be recorded?	Such expenditure will find place against item 5.2.
34.	6.1	6	-	During a trip a visitor availed free transportation provided by another household/institution. In such cases, how the transportation charge will be recorded?	In such cases, imputed cost of fuel, driver, etc. will be reported along with other charges paid during the travel, like toll tax, parking charges, etc.
35.	6.1/6.2	6.4	-	A vehicle was hired for the trip by the household and the parking charges, toll tax, etc., are paid by the household. Where this expenditure is to be recorded?	To be recorded in item 6.4 since the vehicle is hired.
36.	6.1/6.2	7	-	Whether expenditure incurred on purchase of a computer which is used for both productive and consumption purpose is to be considered or not?	Expenditure will be considered if it is exclusively for consumption purpose only.
37.	6.1/6.2	8.5.1	-	A person consumes medicines regularly for B.P. / Diabetes, etc. During the trip also he spends on these medicines. Should such	Yes

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
				expenses be considered in Item 8.5.1?	
38.	6.1/6.2	9	-	If a household performed a trip to pay a visit to ailing mother and incidentally mother died and the household incurred some expenditure on the funeral during the trip. Whether this expenditure will be reported in block 6.2?	Yes, it will be reported in item 9 of block 6.2.
39.	6.1/6.2	4 to 9	-	Some items purchased in preparation for a trip are found used again in subsequent movements of routine nature (not considered as trip for the survey). Whether it will be accounted for?	These are to be included in the expenditure irrespective of their later use.
40.	6.1/6.2	12	-	Railway pass holders generally perform their journeys by rail and no system of reimbursement like LTC is there. Whether this is to be considered as reimbursement?	No. Only the expenditure on reservation charge, etc., if paid, is to be considered.
41.	6.1/6.2	16.4	-	If one person book accommodation personally visiting hotel after arriving at the destination, will the entry against this item be 'yes-1'?	No. For giving code '1' against this item only those cases where a pre-booking (i.e booked before reaching the destination) is done. Spot booking of accommodation after reaching the destination will not be considered for giving code 1
42.	7	General	-	For a trip one household is able to report the lump sum expenditure of the trip but not the break up for each of the major heads like say, 'accommodation', 'food & drink',	In this round, expenditure on each of the major heads will be reported in Block 7. Deep probing may be done to obtain expenditure

Srl. no.	block	item	col.	Questions	Answer
				‘transport’, ‘shopping’, ‘recreation, religious, cultural, sporting and health-related activities’, etc. How to report expenditure in such situations.	for the corresponding major heads, like, ‘accommodation’, ‘food & drink’, ‘transport’, ‘shopping’, ‘recreation, religious, cultural, sporting and health-related activities’, etc.
43.	7	-	1	A person visited the same place three times in a day and the visit qualifies for a same-day trip. It should be taken as only one trip or three trips?	These trips will be treated as three separate trips subject to fulfilling other conditions of same-day trip.
44.	8	general	-	A student went to Kota to attend a course of duration of 9 months. After completing the course, she came back to home 1 month prior to the date of survey. Whether her trip for duration of 9 months will be considered in Block 8?	First it is to be ascertained whether she is currently a member of the selected household as on the date of survey. If she is a current member then this trip will be considered for block 8. However, the course fee paid during the study will not be considered for reporting under Tourism Expenditure.

Statement 1**Some Key findings of the ‘Domestic Tourism expenditure’ of NSS 72nd round (July 2014-June 2015).**

The Survey covered a sample of 79497 rural households from 8001 villages and 60191 urban households from 6061 urban blocks all over India. Some key findings of the survey are given below.

1. Extent of Domestic Tourism Activities in India

- Around 19% of households each in rural and urban areas reported at least one overnight trip with leading purposes (i) holidaying, leisure and recreation; (ii) health & medical and (iii) shopping during last 365 days.
- Around 21% rural households and 20% urban households reported at least one overnight trip with leading purposes (i) business; (ii) social; (iii) pilgrimage & religious activities; (iv) education & training and (v) others during last 30 days.
- Average number of overnight trips with leading purposes holidaying, leisure and recreation; health & medical and shopping undertaken during last 365 days per 100 tourists household was 118 in rural areas and 121 in urban areas.
- Average number of overnight trips with leading purposes business; social; pilgrimage & religious activities; education & training and others undertaken during last 30 days per 100 tourist household was 111 for both in rural and urban areas.

2. Characteristics of trips

- Among the overnight trips completed during last 365 days, 65% trips were for leading purpose ‘health & medical’, another 34% trips were for ‘holidaying, leisure & recreation’ and the remaining 1% was for ‘shopping’.
- Among the overnight trips completed during last 30 days, 86% trips were for leading purpose ‘social’, 8% trips were for ‘religious & pilgrimage’ and the remaining 6% trips for other purposes.

- Among the overnight trips completed during last 365 days with leading purpose holidaying, leisure & recreation, over 40% trips started in the months of May, June or October.
- Bus was the most availed mode of travel in rural area with 50% share of the visitor-trips completed during last 365 days whereas in urban area bus (34%) and train (31%) were almost equally used.
- For the visitor-trips completed during last 30 days, bus was the dominant mode of travel - for 70% of visitor-trips from rural area and 55% of visitor-trips from urban area.
- For 91% of overnight visitor trips from rural area completed during last 365 days, visitors stayed with friends & relatives or in 'other' places whereas in urban case, place of stay during trips were- friends & relatives (36.2%), 'other' places (33.2%), hotel & guest house (25.8%).
- The accommodation used for stay during overnight trips completed during last 30 days was 'friends & relatives' for about 90% overnight visitor-trips from rural areas and 86% overnight visitor-trips from urban areas,
- Maharashtra had the maximum number of visitor trips (1.51 crores) as destination place followed by Uttar Pradesh(1.43 crores) out of those overnight visitor trips originated from all over the country which completed during last 365 days with leading purposes holidaying, leisure and recreation, health & medical and shopping.
- For Overnight visitor trips completed during last 30 days with leading purposes business, social, religious & pilgrimage, education & training and others, Uttar Pradesh (1.60 crores) received maximum number of visitor trips followed by Andhra Pradesh & Telangana (1.30 crores)
- At all India level, 51.7% households reported at least one same-day trip completed during last 30 days (rural -57.1% and urban 40.6 % households).
- 163 same-day trips on an average (i.e. on the average 1.6 trips per tourist household) were generated per 100 tourist household (rural -169 and urban -146).

3. Expenditure on trips

- Among the overnight trips completed during last 365 days, the average expenditure per trip was Rs.15336 for leading purpose 'health & medical', Rs.13902 for leading purpose 'shopping' and Rs.6358 for leading purpose 'holidaying, leisure & recreation'.
- Among the overnight trips completed during last 30 days, the average expenditure per trip was Rs.4455 for leading purpose 'business', Rs.2875 for leading purposes 'others', Rs.2717 for leading purpose 'religious activities & pilgrimage', Rs. 2286 for leading purpose 'education & training' and Rs.1086 for leading purpose 'social'.
- At all India level, average expenditure per same-day trip was Rs.620 (rural: Rs.576 and urban: Rs.767).

Chapter Four

Schedule 5.1: Multiple Indicator Survey

4.0 INTRODUCTION

4.0.1 In NSS 78th round, the Multiple Indicator Survey (MIS) Schedule 5.1 is designed to collect data for generating National Indicators of Sustainable Development Goals (SDG) 2030 wherever relevant data are not available. Based on the request of Ministry of Housing and Urban Affairs (MoHUA), some information on (i) Construction of Houses since 2014-15 and (ii) Migration will also be collected.

4.0.2 Based on the data collected through MIS, estimates of some SDG indicators (both global and national) will be developed. Some of these indicators are described below:

- (i) National Indicator No. 4.1.6: Proportion of students enrolled in Grade 1 who reaches last grade of primary/upper primary/secondary/higher secondary level.
- (ii) National Indicator No. 4.1.7: Out of school ratio (primary, upper primary, elementary, secondary and higher secondary).
- (iii) National Indicator No. 4.2.1: Participation rate in organized learning one year before official primary entry.
- (iv) National Indicator No. 4.3.1: Participation rate of youth and adults in formal and non-formal education and training in the previous 12 months.
- (v) National Indicator No. 4.4.1: Proportion of computer literate adults.
- (vi) National Indicator No. 6.1.1: Percentage of population having safe and adequate drinking water within premises.
- (vii) National Indicator No. 6.1.2: Percentage of population using improved drinking water source.
- (viii) National Indicator No. 8.6.2: Proportion of youth (15-24 years) not in education, employment and training (NEET).
- (ix) National Indicator No. 9.1.1: Proportion of the rural population who live within 2 km of an all-weather road.
- (x) National Indicator No. 1.4.5: Proportion of population having Bank accounts.
- (xi) National Indicator No. 5.a.6: Percentage of adult having an account at a formal financial institution.
- (xii) National Indicator No. 5.a.7: Percentage of women having an account at a formal financial institution.
- (xiii) National Indicator No. 5.a.8: Number of borrowers per 1,00,000 adults.
- (xiv) Global Indicator No. 5.b.1: Proportion of individuals who own a mobile telephone, by sex.
- (xv) Global Indicator No. 1.4.1: Proportion of population living in households with access to basic services.

- (xvi) Global Indicator No. 2.1.2: Prevalence of moderate or severe food insecurity in the population, based on the Food Insecurity Experience Scale (FIES).
- (xvii) Global Indicator No. 6.2.1: Proportion of population using (a) safely managed sanitation services and (b) a hand-washing facility with soap and water.
- (xviii) Global Indicator No. 7.1.1: Proportion of population with access to electricity.
- (xix) Global Indicator No. 8.10.2: Proportion of adults (15 years and older) with an account at a bank or other financial institution or with a mobile-money-service provider.
- (xx) Global Indicator No.16.9.1: Proportion of children under 5 years of age whose births have been registered with a civil authority, by age.

4.0.3 In addition to these, as per the request received from UN Women for developing indicator '*proportion of households with access to mass media (radio, television, internet) by sex of household head*', information on whether any of member of the household has access to mass media (viz. internet, newspaper, magazine, radio, television) will be collected in Household characteristics block. As per the request received from UNICEF for collecting birth registration status, some questions have been incorporated in the schedule.

4.0.4 MoHUA requested NSO to collect some information on 'construction of houses since 2014-15' and 'migration'. Based on the requests of MoHUA, two separate blocks have been incorporated in the MIS schedule. NITI Ayyaog also requested NSO to collect some information on ownership of assets. Accordingly, some provisions have been made in the schedule to collect information on possession of air conditioner(s) and air cooler(s) in the household.

4.1 Summary Description of the Schedule

4.1.1 In NSS 78th round, for MIS, a Schedule 5.1 has been developed which consists of twelve blocks. All blocks are applicable for all sample households. A brief description of these blocks is given below.

block	description of the block
Block0	descriptive identification of sample household
Block1	identification of sample household
Block2	particulars of field operations
Block3	demographic and other particulars of household members
Block4	household characteristics, household level information on drinking water, sanitation, hygiene etc. and other facilities available to the household
Block4.1	age of air conditioner(s) possessed by the household
Block4.2	age of air cooler(s) possessed by the household

block	description of the block
Block5	person level information on education and ICT skills for household members
Block6	purchase/construction of house(s)/flat(s) by household for residential purpose
Block7	migration particulars of household members
Block8	food insecurity experience of the household
Block9	remarks by Field Investigator (FI)/Junior Statistical Officer (JSO)
Block 10	comments by Field Officer (FO)/Senior Statistical Officer (SSO)

4.1.2 The first three blocks, viz. Blocks 0, 1 and 2 are for recording identification particulars of sample households and particulars of field operations. The last two blocks, viz. Blocks 9 and 10 are for recording the remarks of investigator(s) (FI/JSO) and comments of supervisory officer(s) respectively.

4.1.3 Block 3 will be used for recording demographic particulars of household members like name, relation to head, gender, age, marital status, highest level of education, usual principal activity status, and registration of birth certificate of household members of age less than equal to 50 years along with particulars on use of mobile by the household members.

4.1.4 Block 4 will be used for recording information on household size, religion of the household, social group of the household, land possessed by the household, household's usual monthly consumer expenditure, tenurial status of dwelling, area type in which the dwelling unit is located, wall type and roof type of the dwelling unit, primary source of energy used for cooking, primary source of energy used for lighting, primary source of energy used for heating, use of electricity for cooking/lighting/heating, principal source of drinking water, availability of drinking water, access and distance to the principal source of drinking water, access of the household to latrine, type of latrine in which the household has access, access of the household to bathroom, hand washing facility is available within the premises, agency made arrangement for collection of garbage of the household, place of disposal of household garbage, distance to nearest accessible hospital with/without emergency services from the place of living of the household, distance to nearest accessible primary health centre/sub centre from the place of living of the household, distance to nearest open public space from the place of living of the household etc.

4.1.4.1 Information on whether any of the household member has access to any of these mass media (viz. internet, newspaper, magazine, radio, television), whether the household is aware of Pradhan Mantri Awaas Yojana (PMAY), whether the household is aware of Samagra Shiksha Scheme, whether an all-weather road (i.e. usable during all seasons) is within a distance of 2 km from the place of living of the household, whether the nearest public transport facility is within a distance of 0.5 km from the place of living of the

household, whether the household is having broadband access within the premises, whether household possesses any air conditioner, whether household possesses any air cooler will also be collected.

4.1.5 In block 4.1, information will be collected on age of each of the air conditioner possessed by the sample household. Similarly, in block 4.2, information will be collected on age of each of the air cooler possessed by the sample household.

4.1.6 Block 5 will be used for recording different characteristics regarding enrolment in formal or non-formal education viz. status of enrolment, current level of enrolment, age at which first enrolled, type of course, type of institution etc along with particulars of vocational/technical training attended by household members of age 3-35 years and to record the ICT skills of the household members of age 15 years and above.

4.1.7 Block 6 will be used for recording whether the household has purchased/constructed any new house/flat for residential purpose after 31st March, 2014 and if they purchased/constructed any new house/flat, whether any of them is first time owned by the household. If it happens that the household constructed/ purchased a new house/flat after 31.03.2014 and owned it for the first time; then only information on some particulars of that house/flat viz. type of the house/flat, year of purchase/construction, number of rooms, floor area, wall type and roof type etc. will be collected through this block.

4.1.8 Block 7 will be used to record whether the place of enumeration of each of the sample household member is different from his/her last usual place of residence. If it differs, then some particulars of the last usual place of residence will be collected from that sample household member along with the reason for leaving the last usual place of residence, change in income due to migration if the sample household member was an earning member of the household at the time of migration. In addition to these, Block 7 will be used to collect information on type of document(s) that has/have been transferred in present place of enumeration by the sample household member and whether he/she wants to move out of the present place of enumeration.

4.1.9 Block 8 will be used to record food insecurity experience of the sample household. In this block information will be collected on whether any member of the sample household had to skip 'at least one meal' or 'all meals' in at least one day in last 30 days due to lack of money or other resources and if so, number of such days.

4.2 Concepts and definitions

4.2.1 Concepts and definitions for various terms used in this schedule have been discussed in Chapter One.

4.3 Details of Schedule 5.1

4.3.1 The items of the information to be collected under each block is described below along with relevant concepts and definitions.

4.4 Block 0: Descriptive identification of sample household:

4.4.1 This block is meant for recording descriptive identification particulars of the sample household and the sample village/block to which the sample household belongs. All the items in this block are self-explanatory.

- For rural households, entries against items 1-4 will be the same as those in block 0 of Sch. 0.0. Similarly, for urban households, entries against items 1-3 and 5 will be the same as the corresponding items in block 0 of Sch. 0.0.
- Items 4 will record village name to which the sample household belongs. For urban households a dash ('-') mark will be recorded against each of these items.
- Item 5 will record investigator unit/block to which the sample household belongs. For rural households a dash ('-') mark will be recorded against this item.
- Item 6, sample sub-unit (SU) number will be obtained from item 7 of block 0 of Schedule 0.0.
- Item 7 will record the sample sub-division number.
- Against item 8, the name of the head of the selected sample household will be copied from column 3 of block 5A of Sch. 0.0.
- The entry against item 9 will be the name of the informant, i.e. the person from whom the bulk of the information is collected.

4.5 Block 1: Identification of sample household

4.5.1 Identification particulars of the sample household are to be recorded against items 1 to 10. Serial number of sample FSU will be recorded in item 1. The entries against items 2 and 3 are already printed in the schedule. In item 4, sample sub-division number is to be recorded. The concept of sample sub-division number is given in Chapter 1. Items 5 and 6 will be copied from relevant part of block 5A of Sch. 0.0. The srl. no. of informant (as in column 1 of block 3) will be recorded against item 7. The informant is the person from whom the bulk of the information is collected.

4.5.2 **Item 5: second stage stratum number:** This will be obtained from headings of columns (13), (14), (15), (16) & (17) of block 5A of sch. 0.0.

4.5.3 **Item 6: sample household number:** This is same as the order of selection of the sample household and this will be obtained from columns (18), (19), (20), (21) & (22) of block 5A of sch.0.0.

4.5.4 Item 7: serial number of informant: Serial number of the person recorded in column (1) of block 3 of Sch.5.1, from whom the bulk of the information is collected will be entered. It is always desirable to collect information from one of the household members. In extreme cases, where this cannot be done, information may be collected from a non-household member who is supposed to know the requisite information. In such a case, '99' should be recorded against this item.

4.5.5 Item8: response code: This item is to be filled in at the end of the interview. It is meant to categorize the informant according to the degree of his/her co-operation as well as his/her capability to provide the required information. The codes are:

informant co-operative and capable	1
informant co-operative but not capable...	2
informant busy.....	3
informant reluctant.....	4
others.....	9

4.5.6 Item9: survey code: The survey codes are as follows:

household, surveyed:	
original	1
substitute.....	2
household, casualty	3

4.5.6.1 If the originally selected sample household has been surveyed, code 1 will be entered against this item. However, if the originally selected household could not be surveyed for whatever might be the reason, a substituted household will be surveyed and, in such cases, code 2 will be entered. If neither the originally selected household nor the substituted household could be surveyed, i.e., if the sample household is a casualty, code '3' will be recorded. In such cases, only the blocks 0, 1, 2, 9 and 10 will be filled in and on the top of the front page of the schedule the word '**CASUALTY**' will be written and underlined.

4.5.7 Item 10: reason for substitution of original household: In case the originally selected sample household could not be surveyed, the reason for not surveying the original household will be recorded against this item, irrespective of whether or not a substituted household could be surveyed. This item is applicable if the entry against item 9 is either 2 or 3. Otherwise, this item is to be left blank.

The codes are as follows:

informant busy	1
members away from home	2
informant non-cooperative	3
others	9

4.6 Block 2: Particulars of field operations

4.6.1 The names of the Field Investigator/ Junior Statistical Officer, Field Officer (FO)/ Senior Statistical Officer, their signatures, dates of survey/ inspection/scrutiny, dispatch, etc. will be recorded in this block against the appropriate items in the relevant columns. Besides these, codes of field officials are also to be recorded against item 1(ii) (for central sample only). If more than one day is required to canvass the schedule, the first day of survey is to be recorded against the item serial number 2(i). Total time taken to canvass Sch.5.1 will be recorded in item 4. Entry in item 4 will be made in whole number and in minutes. *The time required to canvass the schedule should be the actual time taken by the investigator(s) to canvass the schedule and will not include the time needed by the investigator(s) to finalise the schedule.*

4.7 Block 3: Demographic and other particulars of household members

4.7.1 All members of the sample household will be listed in this block. For each member of the household, demographic particulars like name, relation to head, gender, age, marital status, highest level of education and usual principal activity status will be recorded. For the members of the household who are employed in the usual principal activity status, information on NIC and NCO will also be recorded. Information on the use of mobile telephone with an active sim card for the last three months will also to be collected from each household members. For the household members of age less than or equal to 50 years, information on whether received birth certificate and whether registered with civil authority for birth certificate will be collected.

4.7.2 **Column 1: serial no. (srl. no.):** A running serial number will be given in this column for each member of the sample household starting with the head of the household. The other members will be listed in the usual fashion with the spouse of the head and their children following and the non-relatives at the end.

4.7.3 **Column2:name of the household member (name):** The names of all the members will be written clearly in this column in the order in which they are listed. Name may be shortened to accommodate it in the given space.

4.7.4 **Column 3:relation to head:** The relationship of each of the members to the head of the household will be recorded against the members listed in codes as follows:

self	... 1
spouse of head	... 2
married child	... 3
spouse of married child	... 4
unmarried child	... 5
grandchild	... 6
father/mother/father-in-law/mother-in-law	... 7
brother/sister/brother-in-law/sister-in-law/other relatives	... 8
servant/employee/other non-relatives	...9

4.7.5 **Column 4:gender:** Gender code of each member is to be recorded with code 1 for male and code 2 for female. Hijras, eunuchs or transgender are to be treated as ‘transgender’ and in such cases code 3 will be recorded.

4.7.6 **Column 5:age (years):** The age in completed years of all the members listed, will be ascertained and recorded in column (5). For infants below one year of age, ‘0’ will be recorded in column (5).

4.7.7 **Column 6:marital status:**The marital status of each member of the household will be recorded in this column using the following codes:

never married	... 1
currently married (including living together)	... 2
widowed	... 3
divorced/separated	... 4

4.7.8 **Column 7:highest level of education:** Highest level of education successfully completed by the household member (and not the education level of currently attending, if the household member is currently attending education) will be ascertained and recorded in this column in terms of the following codes:

highest level of education successfully completed	code
not literate (i.e. not able to read or write a simple message with understanding in any language)	01
literate with non-formal education (like, NFEC, AEC, TLC, literate without any schooling, etc.).....	02
<i>literate with formal education</i>	
below primary.....	03
primary	04
upper primary/middle	05
secondary	06

attended domestic duties only.....	92
attended domestic duties and was also engaged in free collection of goods (vegetables, roots, firewood, cattle-feed etc), sewing, tailoring, weaving, etc. for household use.....	93
rentiers, pensioners, remittance recipients, etc.	94
not able to work due to disability.....	95
others (including begging, prostitution, etc.)	97

Description of detailed usual principal activity statuses and their codes are as follows:

4.7.9.1 Procedure for determining usual principal activity status of a person has been mentioned in Chapter One. As mentioned in Chapter One, the broad usual principal activity status of a household member viz. 'employed' (working), 'unemployed' (available for work) or 'not in labour force' (neither working nor available for work) will first be determined by major time criterion in two stages considering the various activities pursued by the person during the reference period of last 365 days and then the detailed usual principal activity status within the broad activity status will be decided considering the detailed activity status in which the person was found for a relatively longer period during last 365 days.

4.7.9.2 For determining the broad usual principal activity status of a person viz. 'employed', 'unemployed' or 'not in labour force', the person will be classified either in 'labour force' or 'not in labour force' in the first stage. The person will be considered to be in the labour force if the person was engaged in an economic activity (i.e. employed) and/or was seeking (or available) for an economic activity (i.e., unemployed) for the major part of the last 365 days. In the second stage, those who are found to be in the labour force will be further classified as 'employed' or 'unemployed' considering the status (employment/unemployment) in which relatively longer period was spent by the person during last 365. The detailed usual principal activity status within the broad status 'employed' will be determined considering the detailed activity status in which the person was found for a relatively longer period during last 365 days. Similarly, the detailed usual principal activity status within the broad status 'not in labour force' will be decided considering the detailed activity status in which the person was found for a relatively longer period during last 365 days.

4.7.9.3 The detailed usual principal activity status codes 11, 12, 21, 31, 41 and 51 refer to the broad activity status 'employed' (or worker), code 81 refers to the broad activity status 'unemployed' and the remaining codes viz. 91 to 97 refer to the broad activity status 'not in labour force'. For children of age 0 - 4 years, code 97 is to be recorded.

4.7.10 Column 9: *industry (2-digit code)*: This column will be filled-in for the household members with any one of codes 11, 12, 21, 31, 41 or 51 in column (8) i.e. for them who are employed (also termed as worker). For each working member of the household, the principal industry of work has to be ascertained and the appropriate 2-digit industry code as per NIC - 2008 is to be recorded in this column. In case, two or more industries corresponding to the status code given in column (8) are reported by a person, the principal industry will be the one in which relatively long time has been spent by the person during last 365 days. This column is not relevant for the household members with any one of codes 81 to 97 in column 8 (i.e. for them who are ‘non-worker’) and may be left blank for them.

4.7.11 Column 10: *occupation (2-digit code)*: This column will be filled-in for the household members with any one of codes 11, 12, 21, 31, 41 or 51 in column (8) i.e. for them who are employed. The principal occupation of each of the working members of the household has to be ascertained and the appropriate 2-digit occupation code as per NCO - 2004 will be recorded in this column. In case, two or more occupations corresponding to the status code given in column (8) are reported by a person, the principal occupation will be the one in which relatively long time has been spent by the person during last 365 days. This column is not relevant for the household members with any one of codes 81 to 97 in column 8 (i.e. for them who are ‘non-worker’) and may be left blank for them.

4.7.12 Column 11: *whether uses any mobile telephone with active sim card for the last three months?* This information is to be collected in particular to track gender equality since the mobile phone is a personal device that if owned and not just shared provides women with a degree of independence and autonomy including professional purposes. Each of the household member will be asked if he/she possess any mobile telephone with an active sim card for the last three months. The response is to be recorded in terms of the following codes:

yes: exclusive use	1
yes: shared with household member(s)	2
yes: shared with non-household member(s)	3
no	4

4.7.12.1 For this survey, an ‘active sim card’ is defined as a sim card that has been used by the household member for the last three months. Also, for this survey, a mobile (cellular) telephone is defined as a portable telephone subscribing to a public mobile telephone service using cellular technology, which provides access to the PSTN (public switched telephone network). This includes analogue and digital cellular systems and technologies such as IMT-2000 (3G) and IMT-advanced.

4.7.12.2 Code 1 is to be recorded if mobile cellular phones was solely used by the household member for personal reasons to make personal calls or access the internet. Code 2 is to be recorded if mobile cellular phones was not solely used by the household member but shared with other members of the household for making calls or to access the internet. Code 3 is to be recorded if mobile cellular phones was shared with some person(s) other than the household member for making calls or to access the internet. If the household member does not possess mobile telephone with an active sim card for the last three months or has only active sim card for the last three months without any mobile phone device, code 4 is to be reported. It is to be noted that the mobile phone may be supplied by employers, or may not be registered against the name of the sample household member.

4.7.13 **Column 12:whether received birth certificate ever:** Information on whether the household members ever received birth certificate will be collected against each of the household members of age less than or equal to 50 years in terms of the following codes:

received	1
did not receive	2
don't know	3

4.7.13.1 Code 1 is to be recorded if the household member reports that he/she ever received birth certificate. Code 2 is to be recorded if the household member reports that he/she never received birth certificate till date. Code 3 is to be recorded if the household member has no idea about the receipt of his/her birth certificate.

4.7.14 **Column 13:whether registered with civil authority for birth certificate:** This information is to be collected for all the household members of age ≤ 50 years who report not to have received birth certificate or not to have any idea about the receipt of his/her birth certificate i.e. with entry 2 or 3 in column 12. These household members will be further enquired on whether they were ever registered with the civil authority for issuance of birth certificate. For this survey, Civil authority includes municipality, Panchayat, Government health institution or other local authority appointed by the State Government for registration of birth and issue of birth certificate. Information on whether household member registered with civil authority for birth certificate will be collected using the following codes:

yes	1
no	2
don't know	3

4.7.14.1 If the household member reports to have been registered with civil authority for issuance of birth certificate, code 1 is to be reported. If the household member reports not

to have been registered with civil authority for issuance of birth certificate, code 2 is to be reported. If the household member reports not to have any knowledge about the registration of birth certificate with civil authority code 3 is to be reported.

4.7.15 Column 14: *whether having an account individually or jointly in any bank/other financial institution/mobile-money-service provider:* This information will be collected for sample household member of ages 15 years or more. If sample household member reports to have an account (by themselves or together with someone else) at a bank or another type of financial institution or personally using a mobile-money-service in the past 12 months, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported. In this survey, a person *holding an account at a bank or another type of financial institution* means that the person is having an account at a bank or at another type of financial institution, such as a credit union, microfinance institution, cooperative, or the post office (if applicable), or having a debit card in own name. In addition to these, the household member who reports to be receiving wages, government transfers, or payments for agricultural products into an account at a financial institution in the past 12 months; paying utility bills or school fees from an account at a financial institution in the past 12 months; or receiving wages or government transfers into a card in the past 12 months will also be included under this category. Also, in this survey, a person *holding a mobile money account* means that the person was using GSM Association (GSMA) Mobile Money for the Unbanked (MMU) services in the past 12 months to pay bills or to send or receive money. In addition, it includes respondents who report to be receiving wages, government transfers, or payments for agricultural products through a mobile phone in the past 12 months.

4.7.16 Column 15: *type of account held:* This information will be collected for sample household members who report to have an account individually or jointly in any bank/other financial institution/ mobile-money-service provider (i.e. for code 1 in col. 14). The information on type of account held will be recorded in terms of the following codes:

bank only	1
other financial institution.....	2
mobile-money-service provider.....	3
any combination of codes 1, 2 or 3.....	4

4.7.16.1 For the sample household member who reports to have an account individually or jointly in bank only, code 1 is to be reported. For the sample household member who reports to have an account individually or jointly in other financial institutions viz. credit union, microfinance institution, cooperative, or the post office, code 2 is to be reported. If the sample household member reports to personally using GSM Association (GSMA) Mobile Money for the Unbanked (MMU) services, code 3 is to be reported. If the household member reports to have any combination of bank and /or other financial institution and /or mobile money service provider, code 4 is to be reported.

4.7.17 Column 16:whether indebted to any institutional/non institutional agency: This information will be collected for sample household members of ages 15 years or more. In this survey, sample household member will be considered as indebted if he/she had taken a cash loan amount of Rs. 500/- and that amount is remained outstanding as on the date of survey. The institutional agencies are Government, co-operative society, co-operative bank, commercial bank including regional rural bank, insurance company, provident fund authority and other institutional agencies including private institutional agencies. All other lending agencies, including relatives and friends, will be considered as non-institutional agencies for this survey.If the household member reports to be indebted to any institutional/non institutional agency as on the date of survey, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.8 Block 4: Household characteristics, household level information on drinking water, sanitation, hygiene etc. and other facilities available to the household

4.8.1 Information on some household characteristics viz. household size, household religion, household social group, land possessed by the household, usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household, tenurial status of dwelling unit, area type in which the dwelling unit is located will be collected in block 4. Block 4 will also be used for recording information on wall type and roof type of the dwelling unit. Information on whether any of the household member has access to any of these mass media (viz. internet, newspaper, magazine, radio, television), whether the household is aware of Pradhan Mantri Awaas Yojana (PMAY), whether the household is aware of Samagra Shiksha Scheme, whether the dwelling unit located in rural areas is within 2 km of all-weather road are also to be collected.

4.8.2 **Item 1: household size:** Definition of ‘Household’ is given in Chapter One. The size of the sample household i.e., the total number of persons normally residing together (i.e., under the same roof) and taking food from the same kitchen (including temporary stay-aways and excluding temporary visitors) will be recorded against this item. This number will tally with the last serial number in the column 1 of block 3.

4.8.3 **Item 2: religion:** The religion of the household will be recorded against this item in terms of codes. In case different members of the household claim to belong to different religions, then the religion of the head of the household will be considered as the ‘religion’ of the household. The codes for recording religion of the sample household will be:

Hinduism	1	Jainism	5
Islam	2	Buddhism	6
Christianity	3	Zoroastrianism	7
Sikhism	4	others	9

4.8.4 **Item 3:social group:** Whether or not the household belongs to scheduled tribe, scheduled caste or other backward class will be indicated against this item in terms of the following codes:

scheduled tribe (ST) - 1
 scheduled caste (SC)- 2
 other backward class (OBC) - 3
 others - 9

4.8.4.1 Those who do not come under any one of the first three social groups will be assigned code 9, meant to cover all other categories. In case different members belong to different social groups, the one to which the head of the household belongs will be considered as the 'social group' of the household.

4.8.5 **Item 4:land possessed as on date of survey:** The area of land possessed by the household as on the date of survey will be recorded against this item in terms of codes. Land possessed by the household is obtained as:

land owned (including land under 'owner like possession') + land leased in – land leased out + land held by the household but neither owned nor leased in (e.g., encroached land).

4.8.5.1 The area of land possessed by the household as on the date of survey will be worked out in hectares and the relevant code corresponding to the area of land possessed is to be recorded against this item in terms of the following codes:

area in hectare	code	area in hectare	code
less than 0.005.....	01	2.01 - 3.01	07
0.005 - 0.02	02	3.01 - 4.01	08
0.02 - 0.21	03	4.01 - 6.01	10
0.21 - 0.41.....	04	6.01 - 8.01	11
0.41 - 1.01.....	05	greater than or equal to 8.01.....	12
1.01 - 2.01	06		

Note: 1 acre = 0.4047 hectare, 1 hectare=10,000 square metre,1 acre= 4047 square metre

4.8.5.2 The area of land possessed by the household within the country only is to be considered. If the sample household does not possess any land, entry '99' may be recorded against this item.

4.8.6 Items 5-10: household's usual monthly consumer expenditure: This information will be collected to classify the households into different MPCE (Monthly Per Capita Consumption Expenditure) classes. Household consumer expenditure (HCE) is the sum total of monetary values of all goods and services consumed (out of purchase or procured otherwise) by the household on domestic account during a reference period. Procedure for deciding consumption of goods and services by a household is same as that followed in Consumer Expenditure Survey (Schedule 1.0) of NSO. Household's usual monthly consumer expenditure is the sum total of monetary values of all goods and services consumed by the household on domestic account with a monthly regularity. Unusual expenditures, such as expenditure on social ceremonies, capitation fee, hospitalisation etc. are to be excluded for deriving usual monthly consumer expenditure of the household. However, expenditure on household durable goods is to be included and monthly expenditure on durable goods is to be derived by apportioning the total expenditure made by the household on durable goods during last 365 days.

4.8.6.1 For deriving Household's usual monthly consumer expenditure, information on regular monthly expenditure of the household for household purposes out of purchase, home grown and wages in kind, free collection, gift etc. is to be collected along with the information on expenditure of the household for purchase of items like clothing, footwear etc. and purchase of durable goods during last 365 days. For this purpose, provision has been made for items 5 to 9 in this block as mentioned below:

item 5: usual consumer expenditure in a month for household purposes out of purchase of goods and services excluding items like clothing, footwear (A)

item 6: imputed value of usual consumption in a month from home grown stock like, rice, cereals, pulses, vegetables, milk, firewood, chips, cow dung, etc. (B)

item 7: imputed value of usual consumption in a month from wages in kind, free collection, gifts, etc. (C)

item 8: expenditure on purchase of items like clothing, footwear etc. during last 365 days(D)

item 9: expenditure on purchase of household durables during last 365 days(E)

4.8.6.2 On the basis of the entries (A, B, C, D, E) reported in items 5 to 9, household's usual monthly consumer expenditure will be derived using the following formula:

$$\text{household's usual monthly consumer expenditure} = A + B + C + (D+E/12)$$

4.8.6.3 Household's usual monthly consumer expenditure will be recorded in item 10 in whole number of rupees. Also, entries in items 5 to 9 are to be recorded in whole number

of rupees. If any of the items 5 to 9 is not relevant for the sample household, entry '0' may be recorded in that item.

4.8.6.3.1 Item 5: usual consumer expenditure in a month for household purposes out of purchase of goods and services excluding items like clothing, footwear (A): Regular monthly expenditure incurred by the household for purchase of goods and services for consumption of the household for household purposes will be reported in item 5. Any expenditure made by the household for purchase of household durable goods will not be included in this item.

4.8.6.3.2 Item 6: imputed value of usual consumption in a month from home grown stock like, rice, cereals, pulses, vegetables, milk, firewood, chips, cow dung, etc. (B): There are households, especially in rural areas, who use household consumer goods like rice, cereals, pulses, vegetables, milk, firewood & chips, cow dung etc. from home grown stock on a regular basis. For households who use household consumer goods from home grown stock on regular basis, the imputed value of such usual consumption in a month at ex-farm/ex-factory price will be recorded in item 6.

4.8.6.3.3 Item 7: imputed value of usual consumption in a month from wages in kind, free collection, gifts, etc. (C): There are some households who regularly consumes goods and services that are received as exchange of goods and services provided by them. For wage salaried employees, such services received could be perquisites like free electricity, free telephone services, free medical services etc. For agricultural labourers, such goods and services received could be food-grains, vegetables, meals etc. as payment for wages in kind. In some cases, it may also happen that household regularly consumes goods and services received as gifts or obtained through free collection. For households who regularly consume goods and services received as wages in kind, in exchange of goods provided by them, as gifts or obtained through free collection etc.; the imputed value of such usual consumption in a month at local retail prices will be recorded in item 7.

4.8.6.3.4 Item 8: expenditure on purchase of clothing, footwear etc. during last 365 days (D): Expenditure incurred by the household during the last 365 days for purchase of clothing, footwear etc. will be recorded in item 8.

4.8.6.3.5 Item 9: expenditure on purchase of household durables during last 365 days (E): Expenditure incurred by the household during the last 365 days for purchase/construction and repair of household durable goods like, bedstead, furniture, vehicles, TV sets, fridge, fans, cooler, AC, mobile phones, computers, kitchen equipment, etc. will be recorded in item 9.

4.8.6.3.6 Item 10: usual monthly consumer expenditure: Household's usual monthly consumer expenditure will be reported in item 10 in whole number of rupees which will be derived from the entries reported in item 5 (viz. A), item 6 (viz. B), item 7 (viz. C), item 8 (viz. D) and item 9 (viz. E) by using the following formula:

$$\text{household's usual monthly consumer expenditure} = A + B + C + [(D+E)/12]$$

4.8.7 Item 11: tenurial status of dwelling unit: A dwelling unit is the accommodation used by the household for its residential purpose. The tenurial status of the dwelling unit indicating the type of possession of the household on the dwelling unit will be recorded in this item in terms of the following codes:

owned:

freehold 1

leasehold..... 2

hired:

employer quarter 3

hired dwelling unit with written contract..... 4

hired dwelling unit without written contract..... 5

others 9

no dwelling 6

4.8.7.1 A dwelling unit is considered to be ‘owned’ by the sample household if permanent heritable possession with or without the right to transfer the title is vested in a member or members of the household. Dwelling unit with owner-like possession under long term lease or assignment is also considered as owned. If the sample household has the right of permanent heritable possession of the dwelling unit with or without the right to transfer the title, the dwelling unit will be considered as ‘freehold’ and code 1 will be recorded. In cases where the household does not possess the title of ownership of the dwelling unit but has the right for long term possession of the dwelling unit (e.g., dwelling units possessed under perpetual lease, hereditary tenure and long term lease for 30 years or more), the tenurial status of the dwelling unit will be considered as ‘leasehold’ and code 2 will be recorded.

4.8.7.2 If the dwelling unit, in which the sample household lives, is provided to a member of the sample household by his/her employer, the dwelling unit will be considered as ‘employer quarter’ and code 3 will be assigned. If the dwelling unit is taken on rent, by the sample household, which is payable at monthly, quarterly or any other periodic intervals or on lease, for a period of less than 30 years, it will be treated as a hired dwelling unit. It may be noted that a hired dwelling unit may be free of rent also. If the sample household had written contract with its owner for the hired dwelling unit, the tenurial status of the dwelling unit will be considered as ‘hired dwelling unit with written contract’ and code 4 will be entered in item 11. On the other hand, if the sample household had no written contract with its owner for the hired dwelling unit, the tenurial status of the dwelling unit

will be considered as 'hired dwelling unit without written contract' and code 5 will be entered in item 11.

4.8.7.3 Households living more or less regularly under staircase, in tents, in pipes, under bridges, in purely temporary flimsy improvisations built by the roadside (which are liable to be removed at any moment) are considered to have no dwelling and for such households code 6 will be recorded against this item. Code 9 will be entered in all other types of possession of the dwelling unit (e.g., encroached one).

4.8.8 Item 12: area type in which the dwelling unit is located: In this item, information will be collected for the households having dwelling units i.e., entry in item 11 as any of 1 to 5 or 9. Households having dwelling units are considered as living in houses. For households living in houses, information on the type of area in which the dwelling unit is located will be recorded against this item in terms of following codes:

notified slum.....	1
non-notified slum.....	2
squatter settlement.....	3
other areas.....	9

4.8.8.1 The definitions of notified slum, non-notified slum and squatter settlement are given in Chapter One. *Slums and squatter settlements will be considered for urban areas only and for households in rural areas, only code 9 will be recorded against item 11.* To collect information regarding the area type in which the dwelling unit is located, some knowledgeable persons of the locality may have to be contacted apart from the informant belonging to the sample household.

4.8.8.2 A slum may be a notified slum or a non-notified slum. Notified slums are the areas notified as slums by the municipalities, corporations, local bodies or development authorities. A non-notified slum is a compact settlement with a collection of poorly built tenements, mostly of temporary nature, crowded together, usually with inadequate sanitary and drinking water facilities in unhygienic conditions with at least 20 or more households and is not notified as slums by concerned municipalities, corporations, local bodies or development authorities. Slum like settlements with less than 20 households is considered as squatter settlements. The criteria of 20 households for non-notified slum or squatter settlement is not with respect to the FSU only but by considering the whole area of such non-notified slum or squatter settlement, which may cut across more than one FSUs. Thus, the areas of a notified slum, non-notified slum or squatter settlement may entirely belong to the selected FSU or a part of such areas may be in the FSU. The appropriate code for area type in which the dwelling unit is located will be determined as follows:

- In case the dwelling unit is situated in a notified slum, code 1 will be recorded, irrespective of whether the notified slum belongs entirely or partly to the selected FSU
- In case the dwelling unit is situated in a non-notified slum, code 2 will be recorded, irrespective of whether the non-notified slum belongs entirely or partly to the selected FSU
- In case the dwelling unit is situated in a squatter settlement, code 3 will be recorded, irrespective of whether the squatter settlement belongs entirely or partly to the selected FSU,
- For all other areas, code 9 will be recorded against this item.

4.8.9 **Item 13: wall type of the dwelling unit:** In this item, information will be collected for the households having dwelling units i.e., entry in item 11 as any of 1 to 5 or 9. Information on the basic building materials with which the walls of the dwelling unit of the household are constructed will be recorded in terms of the following codes:

wall type:

grass / straw / leaves / reeds / bamboo, etc.	1
mud (with / without bamboo) / unburnt brick	2
canvas / cloth	3
other katcha	4
timber	5
burnt brick / stone / limestone	6
iron or other metal sheet	7
cement/ RBC/ RCC	8
other pucca	9

4.8.9.1 When the basic building materials used are different for different walls, the materials used for *major portion* of wall area of the dwelling unit will be the wall type. For determining the wall type, only the walls of the dwelling will be considered. If more than one code is applicable for any item, the code which appears first will be recorded.

4.8.10 **Item 14: roof type of the dwelling unit:** In this item, information will be collected for the households having dwelling units i.e., entry in item 11 as any of 1 to 5 or 9. Information on the basic building materials with which the roof of the dwelling unit of the household are constructed will be recorded in terms of codes given as follows:

roof type:

grass / straw / leaves / reeds / bamboo, etc.	1
mud / unburnt brick	2

canvas / cloth	3
other katcha	4
tiles / slate	5
burnt brick / stone / limestone	6
iron / zinc / other metal sheet /asbestos sheet	7
cement / RBC / RCC	8
other pucca	9

4.8.10.1 Roof type will also be determined on the basis of the material used for major portion of roof area of the dwelling, if the different portions of the roof are made of different building materials. For determining the material of the roof, the material of which the outer roof exposed to the weather (and not the ceiling) is made, i.e., tiles, thatch, corrugated iron, zinc or asbestos sheet, etc., will be considered. However, if the roof is mainly made of bricks, tiles, stone, etc., with the mud, cement or lime plaster exposed to the sky, the material of roof will not be mud, cement, lime, etc. but it will be brick, tile, stone, etc. which constituted the fabric of the roof. If more than one code is applicable for any item, the code which appears first will be recorded.

4.8.11 **Item 15:kitchen type of the dwelling unit:** In this item, information will be collected for the households having dwelling units (i.e., entry in item 11 as any of 1 to 5 or 9). Information regarding the kitchen facility available in the dwelling unit of the household will be recorded in this item in terms of the following codes:

separate kitchen:

with water tap.....	1
without water tap	2
no separate kitchen	3

4.8.11.1 If the dwelling unit of the household has a room used exclusively as a kitchen, it will be considered that the dwelling unit of the household has a separate kitchen and one of the codes 1 and 2 will be recorded in this item. If a water tap is there inside such kitchen, code 1 will be recorded and code 2 will be recorded if no water tap is there inside such kitchen. If a room is used as kitchen-cum-store or kitchen-cum-dining room, then also the household will be considered to have a separate kitchen. In all other cases, code 3 will be recorded. For example, if a room is shared as kitchen by two or more households, code 3 will be recorded in this item.

4.8.12 **Item 16:primary source of energy used for cooking:** Information on primary source of energy generally used by the household for cooking purpose will be recorded in this item using the following codes:

firewood, chips & crop residue.....	01
LPG	02
other natural gas	03
dung cake	04
kerosene	05
coke, coal	06
gobar gas	07
other biogas	08
charcoal	09
electricity (incl. generated by solar/wind power generators)	10
solar cooker	11
others	19
no cooking arrangement	12

4.8.12.1 If the household used ‘firewood, chips and crop residue’ as primary energy for cooking then code 01 will be recorded. If the household used ‘LPG’ as primary energy for cooking then code 02 will be recorded. The other codes will be recorded accordingly based on the type of primary source of energy used by the household for cooking. If more than one type of primary source of energy are used by the household for cooking, the type of fuel mainly used by the household will be reported in this item. If the household has no cooking arrangement, code 12 will be recorded against this item.

4.8.13 **Item 17:primary source of energy used for lighting:** Information on primary source of energy generally used by the household for lighting purpose will be recorded in this item using the following codes:

electricity(incl. generated by solar or wind power generators)	1
kerosene.....	2
other oil.....	3
gas.....	4
candle.....	5
others.....	9
no lighting arrangement.....	6

4.8.13.1 If the household used ‘electricity (incl. generated by solar or wind power generators)’ as the primary source of energy for lighting then code 01 will be recorded. If the household used ‘kerosene’ as primary source of energy for lighting then code 02 will be recorded. The other codes will be recorded accordingly based on the type of primary source of energy used by the household for lighting. If more than one type of primary source of energy are used by the household for lighting, the type of primary energy mainly used by the household will be reported in this item. If the household used any primary source of energy which is not provided in the code list, code 9 is to be reported. If the household has no lighting arrangement, code 6 will be recorded against this item.

4.8.14 **Item 18: primary source of energy used for heating:** Information on primary source of energy generally used by the household for heating purpose will be recorded in this item using the following codes:

firewood, chips & crop residue.....	01
LPG	02
other natural gas	03
dung cake	04
kerosene	05
coke, coal	06
gobar gas	07
other biogas	08
charcoal	09
electricity (incl. generated by solar/wind power generators)	10
solar cooker	11
others	19
no heating arrangement	12

4.8.14.1 If the household used ‘firewood, chips and crop residue’ as primary source of energy for heating then code 01 will be recorded. If the household used ‘LPG’ as primary source of energy for heating then code 02 will be recorded. The other codes will be recorded accordingly based on the type of primary source of energy used by the household for heating. If more than one type of primary source of energy are used by the household for heating, the type of primary energy mainly used by the household will be reported in this item. If the household has no heating arrangement, code 12 will be recorded against this item.

4.8.15 Item 19: *whether electricity is used for cooking/lighting/heating:* Information where the household uses electricity for cooking, heating, lighting will be collected in terms of the following codes:

cooking only.....	1
lighting only.....	2
heating only.....	3
lighting and cooking.....	4
lighting and heating.....	5
cooking and heating.....	6
all (lighting and cooking and heating)	7
not used for any of lighting, cooking, heating.....	8

4.8.15.1 If the household reports to be using electricity only for cooking but not for lighting and heating, code 1 is to be recorded. If the household reports to be using electricity only for lighting but not for cooking and heating, code 2 is to be recorded. If the household reports to be using electricity only for heating but not for lighting and cooking, code 3 is to be recorded. If the household reports to be using electricity for both cooking and lighting but not for heating, code 4 is to be recorded. If the household reports to be using electricity for both lighting and heating but not for cooking, code 5 is to be recorded. If the household reports to be using electricity for both cooking and heating but not for lighting, code 6 is to be recorded. If the household reports to be using electricity for all three i.e. cooking and heating and lighting, code 7 is to be recorded. If the household reports not to be using electricity for any of the three i.e. cooking, heating, lighting, code 8 is to be recorded.

4.8.16 Item 20: *principal source of drinking water:* Information in respect of the household's principal source of drinking water will be collected in this item. Principal source of drinking water will relate to that source of drinking water from which most of the drinking water of the household was obtained during the last 365 days. The relevant codes for this item are:

bottled water.....	01
pipied water into dwelling	02
pipied water to yard/plot	03
pipied water from neighbour.....	04
public tap/standpipe.....	05

tube well.....	06
hand pump.....	07
<i>well:</i>	
protected.....	08
unprotected.....	09
<i>tanker-truck</i>	
public.....	10
private.....	11
<i>spring:</i>	
protected.....	12
unprotected.....	13
rainwater collection	14
<i>surface water:</i>	
tank/pond.....	15
other surface water (river, dam, stream, canal, lake, etc.) ..	16
others (cart with small tank or drum, etc.)	19

4.8.16.1 Descriptions of the different sources of drinking water are given below:

i) *Bottled drinking water:* Drinking water packaged in bottles, jars, pouches, and similar containers will be classified as bottled drinking water. Generally, this packaged drinking water meets certain safety standards and are considered safe for drinking. Tap water, well water, etc., kept by households in bottles, for convenience, will not be treated as bottled drinking water.

ii) *Piped water into dwelling and piped water to yard/plot:* If an arrangement is made by corporation, municipality, panchayat or other local authorities or any private or public housing estate or agency to supply water through pipe and if the sample household is availing such facility for drinking, then such sources of drinking water is considered as piped water. Piped water into dwelling is defined as a piped water connection to one or more taps to the dwelling unit (e.g., in the kitchen). Piped water to yard/plot is defined as a

piped water connection to a tap placed outside the dwelling unit of the household but in the yard or plot within the household premises.

iii) *Piped water from neighbour*: If an arrangement is made by the sample household to avail drinking water from the piped water of the neighbour household supplied by corporation/municipality/panchayat or other local authorities or any private or public housing estate or agency, then the source of drinking water for the sample household will be considered as 'piped water from neighbour'. If the sample household collects drinking water from more than one neighbour, then also code '04' will be recorded against item 1.

iv) *Public tap/standpipe*: Public tap or standpipe is a water point for community use in which water is supplied through pipe by corporation/municipality/panchayat or other local authorities or any private agency. Public tap/standpipe can have one or more taps and are typically made of brickwork, masonry or concrete.

v) *Tube well and Hand pump*: Tube well and hand pump are bore well used for extracting ground water for drinking purpose. For constructing a bore well, a deep vertical hole is bored or drilled and a long casing or pipe is sunk deep into the underground with the purpose of reaching ground water supplies and ground water is lifted through a pump, which may be powered by human, animal, wind, electric, diesel or solar means. The casing or pipes prevent the small diameter hole from caving in and protect the water source from infiltration by run-off water. Bore wells are usually protected by a platform around it, which leads spilled water away from the tube well. If the pump of the bore well is operated by animal, wind, electric, diesel or solar means etc., it is known as tube well and if the pump is operated manually by hand using human power and mechanical advantage to lift ground water, it is known as hand pump.

vi) *Protected well/unprotected well*: A well is considered as protected if it has generally the following protective measures to lower the risk of contamination:

- a. A headwall around the well with a properly fitting cover
- b. A concrete drainage platform around the well with a drainage channel
- c. A hand pump or bucket with windlass

If instead of hand pump or bucket with windlass, electric pump is used to pump water from such wells, where the conditions (1) and (2) exist, it will be considered as protected well. A well which is not protected by the above measures, e.g., the well is not protected from runoff water or the well is not protected from bird droppings and animals, it will be classified as unprotected well.

vii) *Tanker-truck: public/private*: In 'tanker-truck', drinking water is trucked to a locality and supplied from tanker to the households of the locality. If the 'tanker-truck' is operated by any government agencies (central/state/local bodies etc.) and the sample household reports that it is their principal source of drinking water then the source of drinking water

of the household will be recorded as ‘public tanker-truck’ (code 10). In case the ‘tanker-truck’ is operated by private agencies (NGOs, trusts etc.) and the sample household reports that it is their principal source of drinking water, then the source of drinking water of the household will be recorded as ‘private tanker-truck’ (code 11). It is to be noted that in both the cases, sample household may have to pay the price for the water. Therefore, price should not be made as a criterion to determine whether the source is public or private. Instead deep probing needs to be made to ascertain the type of agency who supplies the water from the ‘tanker-truck’.

viii) *Protected spring/unprotected spring*: A spring is considered as protected, if it is protected from runoff, bird droppings and animals by a ‘spring box’, which is constructed of brick, masonry or concrete and is built around the spring so that water flows directly out of the box into a pipe or cistern, without being exposed to outside pollution. A spring which is not protected is called unprotected spring.

ix) *Rainwater collection*: Rainwater refers to rain that is collected or harvested from surfaces (by roof or ground catchment) and stored in a container, tank or cistern until used. Traditionally, rainwater collection has been practised in arid and semi-arid areas to get drinking water of the household and water for other uses. When such water is used for drinking purpose, the source of drinking water will be rainwater collection (code 14).

x) *Surface water*: Surface water is water located above ground and includes rivers, dams, lakes, ponds, streams, canals and irrigation channels. For surface water, two distinct codes have been provided, one for ‘tank/pond’ (code 15) and another for ‘other surface water (river, dam, stream, canal, lake, etc.)’ (code 16).

xi) *Others (cart with small tank or drum, etc.)*: In ‘cart with small tank or drum’, water is supplied in small tank or drum to a locality by donkey carts, motorized vehicles and other means.

4.8.16.2 It is important to note that source of drinking water of same type located at two different places will not be treated as two different sources of drinking water. It may also be noted that drinking water carried through pipe from sources like tanker-truck, well, tank, river, etc., by the owner/occupants only for convenience of the household will not be treated as piped water (i.e., piped water into dwelling or piped water to yard/plot). Instead, such a source will get the code appropriate to the actual source from which water is carried through pipe. When a household makes arrangement for getting drinking water by hiring the services of persons, the source of water will be the one from which water is collected by the hired person.

4.8.17 **Item 21: whether availability of drinking water from the principal source is sufficient throughout the year**: For the purpose of this item, availability of drinking water from the principal source will be considered as sufficient throughout the year if availability of drinking water was sufficient in each calendar month of the last 12 months. If in any

calendar month, the availability of drinking water was not sufficient for majority of the days of the month, availability of drinking water will not be considered as sufficient in that month. For collecting this information, the investigator will have to depend on the judgement of the informant. Entry in this item will be recorded in terms of the codes: *yes - 1; no - 2*. Code 1 will be recorded if the household reports that the availability of drinking water from the principal source was sufficient throughout the year; otherwise, code 2 will be recorded.

4.8.18 Item 22: access to the principal source of drinking water: Access of the household to the principal source of drinking water is defined in terms of the prevailing situation reported by the sample household in respect of the principal source of drinking water that is being used and not the legal right to use the source of drinking water. Code structure for this item is as follows:

exclusive use of household.....	1
common use of households in the building	2
neighbour's source	3
<i>community use:</i>	
public source restricted to particular community	4
public source unrestricted	5
private source restricted to particular community.....	6
private source unrestricted.....	7
others.....	9

4.8.18.1 To determine the appropriate code for this item, following points may be noted:

- If the principal source of drinking water is for the exclusive use of household, code 1 will be recorded.
- If the principal source of drinking water is shared by the sample household with one or more households in the building, code 2 will be recorded.
- If the source of water is that of another household and the sample household uses it as the principal source of drinking water, code 3 will be recorded.

- If the source is for community use, any of the codes 4 to 7 will be recorded, depending on the situation. The code structure for community use of the principal source of drinking water is made fourfold to have information on source of funding for the creation of the facility as also to have information on its restricted/unrestricted access due to certain socio-cultural reasons.
 - If the principal source of drinking water is created with the public fund and its use is restricted to a particular community, code 4 will be applicable and if it is created with public fund but the use of that source is not restricted to any particular community, i.e., if access is unrestricted, code 5 will be applicable.
 - On the other hand, if the principal source of drinking water is created with the private fund and its use is restricted to particular community, code 6 will be applicable and if it is created with private fund but the use of that source is not restricted to any particular community, i.e., if access is unrestricted, code 7 will be applicable.
- If access of the household to the principal source of drinking water is not covered by any of the codes 1 to 7, code 9 will be recorded. For example, when households residing in two separate buildings, use the same source of drinking water, code 9 will be recorded.

4.8.19 **Item 23: *distance to the principal source of drinking water:*** The distance to the principal source of drinking water from the dwelling unit will be ascertained and relevant information is to be recorded in this item in terms of the following codes:

within dwelling	1
outside dwelling but within the premises	2
<i>outside premises:</i>	
less than 0.2 k.m.....	3
0.2 to 0.5 k.m.....	4
0.5 to 1.0 k.m.....	5
1.0 to 1.5 k.m.....	6
1.5 k.m. or more.....	7

4.8.19.1 If the source of drinking water is within the dwelling unit, code 1 will be recorded. When the source of drinking water is outside the dwelling but within the household premises, code 2 will be recorded. In the other cases, i.e., when the source is outside the premises, the distance of the source from the dwelling unit will be ascertained and appropriate code will be recorded. Here, code 4 (i.e. distance 0.2 to 0.5 k.m.) will cover those cases where distance of the principal source of drinking water from the dwelling unit is 0.2 k.m. or more but less than 0.5 k.m; code 5 (i.e. distance 0.5 to 1.0 k.m.) will cover those cases where distance to the principal source of drinking water from the dwelling unit is 0.5 k.m. or more but less than 1.0 k.m, and so on.

4.8.20 **Item 24: time taken for a single trip to reach the principal source of drinking water, obtain water and back to household (in minutes):** This item will be filled in for the households with entry any of 3 to 7 in item 23. In this item, time usually taken in a single trip for fetching drinking water of the household from the principal source will be recorded in whole number and in minutes. The time usually taken for fetching drinking water in a single trip will be obtained by considering the total time usually required for reaching to the principal source of drinking water, waiting time at the principal source of drinking water (i.e., time spent in queue and the time required for filling the container) and coming back to the dwelling unit with water in a single occasion. In determining the time taken for a single trip, time spent in socialising, gossiping, shopping, free collection of vegetables, etc., will be excluded.

4.8.21 **Item 25: access of the household to latrine:**For the purpose of the survey, a 'latrine' is defined as an infrastructure which allows safer and more hygienic disposal of human excreta than open defecation. In this survey, 'access of the household to latrine' is defined in terms of the latrine facility that can be used by the majority of the household members, irrespective of whether it is being used by them or not. For recording information in this item, it will first be ascertained whether the household has access to any latrine or not. If the household has access to latrine (i.e. there is latrine facility that can be used by majority of the household members), then it is to be ascertained whether household's access to latrine is for 'exclusive use of the household' or for 'common use of households in the building' or for 'public/community use with/without payment' or 'others'. The relevant information will be recorded in this item in terms of the following codes:

exclusive use of household.....	1
common use of households in the building.....	2
public/community use without payment.....	3
public/community use with payment.....	4
others.....	9

no access to latrine..... 5

4.8.21.1 If the household has access to latrine, one of the codes 1 to 4 and 9 will be recorded in item 25 depending upon the type of access of the household to latrine. If the latrine facility is for the exclusive use of the household, code 1 will be recorded in item 25. If the latrine facility is shared by the household with one or more households in the building, code 2 will be recorded. If the household can use a latrine facility which is for use of the households in the locality or for a specific section of the people, it will be considered that the household has access to public/community latrine. If public/community latrine can be used without making any payment, code 3 will be recorded and code 4 will be recorded if payment is required to use the public/community latrine. If the household has access to latrine for which any of the codes 1 to 4 is not applicable, code 9 will be recorded. For example, when the households of two separate buildings use the same latrine, then code 9 will be recorded. If the household does not have access to any latrine, code 5 will be recorded. If more than one code is applicable for a household, the code appearing first in the code list will be reported.

4.8.22 **Item 26: type of latrine in which the household has access:** This item will be filled in for the households which have access to latrine, i.e., entry any of 1 to 4 and 9 in item 25. For the households which have access to latrine, information on ‘type of latrine in which the household has access’ will be recorded in this item in terms of the following codes:

flush/pour-flush to:

piped sewer system.....	01
septic tank.....	02
twin leach pit.....	03
single leach pit	04
elsewhere (open drain, open pit, open field, etc.)	05
ventilated improved pit latrine.....	06
pit latrine with slab.....	07
pit latrine without slab/open pit.....	08
composting latrine.....	10
open drain/nallah	11
others.....	19

4.8.22.1 If majority of the sample household members has access to latrine, it will be considered that the sample household has access to latrine. If sample household has access to latrine, any of the codes 01 to 10 and 19 will be recorded in this item depending on the

type of latrine which the sample household has access. If the sample household has more than one type of latrine, the type of latrine which is generally accessed by the majority of the household members will be reported here. If more than one code is applicable for a household, the code appearing first in the code list will be reported here. Different types of latrines are described in the following paragraphs.

4.8.22.2 There are two basic types of latrines, wet and dry, differentiated depending on use of water to divert human excreta. In a wet latrine water is used to divert human excreta while dry latrines use very limited water or no water for flushing the human excreta. Besides these two basic types of latrines, there are latrines like, incinerating latrines which burn the human excreta; chemical latrines which are used in a variety of situations like in passenger trains and airplanes; hanging latrines, which deposit waste directly into open waterways; bucket latrine, in which human excreta are collected in a bucket placed underneath a latrine hole.

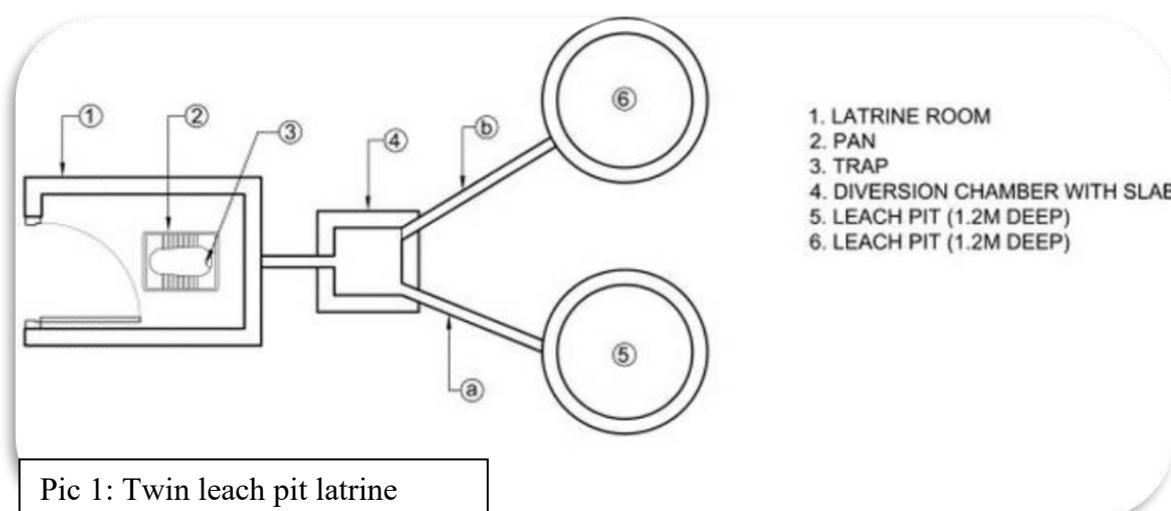
4.8.22.3 In the code structure of ‘type of latrine in which the household has access’, the different types of wet latrines are: (i) flush/pour-flush to piped sewer system, (ii) flush/pour-flush to septic tank, (iii) flush/pour-flush to twin leach pit, (iv) flush/pour-flush to single leach pit and (v) flush/pour-flush to elsewhere. The different types of dry latrines are: (i) ventilated improved pit latrine, (ii) pit latrine with slab, (iii) pit latrine without slab/open pit and (iv) composting toilet. The different types of latrines included under the category ‘other’ are: incinerating latrines, chemical latrines, hanging latrines, bucket latrine, etc.

4.8.22.4 Descriptions of the different types of latrines are given below:

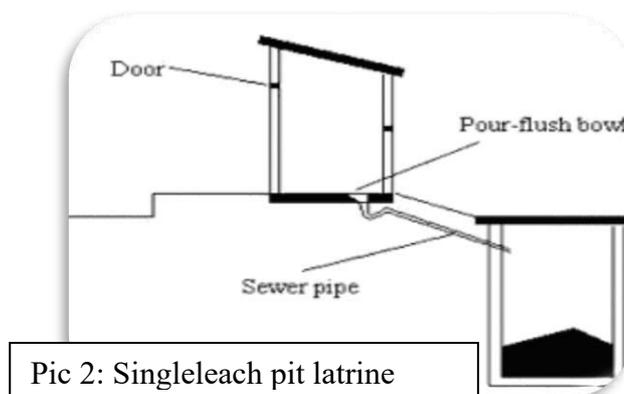
- *Flush/pour-flush*: Flush latrine uses a cistern or holding tank for flushing water, and a water seal (which is a U-shaped pipe below the seat or squatting pan) that prevents the passage of flies and odours. A pour-flush latrine uses a water seal, but unlike a flush latrine, it uses water poured by hand for flushing (no cistern is used). Depending on the system/site where human excreta and wastewater are disposed off, flush/pour-flush latrine can be of the following types: (i) piped sewer system, (ii) septic tank, (iii) twin leach pit, (iv) single pit, (v) elsewhere (open drain, open pit, open field, etc.)
- *Piped sewer system*: Piped sewer system is a system of sewer pipes, also called sewerage that is designed to collect human excreta and wastewater and remove them from the household environment. If the sample household has access to flush/pour-flush latrine which is connected to *piped sewer system*, code 01 will be recorded.
- *Septic tank*: Septic tank is an excreta collection device consisting of a water-tight settling tank, which is normally located underground. The treated effluent of a

septic tank usually seeps into the ground through a leaching pit. If the sample household has access to flush/pour-flush latrine which is connected to *septic tank*, code 02 will be recorded.

- *Flush/pour-flush to twin leach pits/single leach pit*: In twin pit flush/pour-flush latrine, the excreta are carried into subsurface leach pits through pipes or covered drains and one pit is used at a time. The liquid infiltrates into the soil through the holes in the pit lining. The gases also disperse into the soil, and therefore, the provision of a vent pipe for its outlet is not necessary. When one pit is full, the excreta are diverted to the second pit. The filled pit can be conveniently emptied after a rest period of one and a half years, during which pathogens are inactivated and the organic matter decomposed. Thus, the two pits can be used alternately and continuously. For better understanding of the function of ‘twin leach pits’ latrine, a picture (Pic 1) of ‘plan for twin leach pit’ is given below. If the sample household has access to flush/pour-flush latrine which is connected to a twin leach pit, code 03 will be recorded.



- In a single leach pit system desludging is required immediately after the pit has filled up, and therefore involves handling of fresh and undigested excreta which is hazardous to health. Single leach pits are appropriate only if a mechanical desludging vacuum tanker is readily available, or if the pit is abandoned when full. For better understanding of the functioning of ‘single leach pit’ latrine, a picture (Pic 2) of single leach pit latrine is given below. If the sample household has access to flush/pour-flush latrine which is connected to a single leach pit, code 04 will be recorded.



Pic 2: Singleleach pit latrine

- *Flush/pour-flush to elsewhere (open drain, open pit, open field, etc)*: This type of latrine refers to the system of flush/pour-flush latrine where excreta are disposed of near the household environment (not into a pit, septic tank, or sewer). Excreta may be flushed to the open drain, open pit, open field, etc. If the sample household has access to this type of *latrine*, code 05 will be recorded.
- *Ventilated improved pit latrine*: This is a dry pit latrine ventilated by a pipe that extends above the latrine roof. The open end of the vent pipe is covered with gauze mesh or fly-proof netting and the inside of the superstructure is kept dark. If the sample household has access to *ventilated improved pit latrine*, code 06 will be recorded.
- *Pit latrine with slab*: This is a dry pit latrine that uses a hole in the ground to collect the excreta and a squatting slab or platform that is firmly supported on all sides, easy to clean and raised above the surrounding ground level to prevent surface water from entering the pit. The platform has a squatting hole or is fitted with a seat. Unlike the ventilated improved pit latrine, in this type of latrine, vent pipe is not used. If the sample household has access to *pit latrine with slab*, code 07 will be recorded.
- *Pit latrine without slab/open pit*: Pit latrine without slab uses a hole in the ground for excreta collection and does not have a squatting slab, platform or seat. If the sample household has access to such latrine, code 08 will be recorded.
- *Composting latrine*: This is a dry latrine into which carbon-rich material (vegetable wastes, straw, grass, sawdust, ash) are added to the excreta and special conditions maintained to produce inoffensive compost. If the sample household has access to *composting latrine*, code 10 will be recorded.
- *Open drain/nallah* : If the sample household has access to a latrine which actually is an open drain or nallah, then code 11 will be recorded.

- *Others*: If the sample household uses a latrine which is not covered in the codes 01 to 08 and 10 to 11, code 19 will be recorded here. Examples of such latrine are (i) hanging latrine which is built over the sea, a river, or other body of water, into which excreta drops directly, (ii) service latrine which are serviced by scavengers.

4.8.23 Item 27: access of the household to bathroom: In this survey, a bathing place which satisfies the criteria of a room is considered as a 'bathroom'. An enclosed area without a roof used for bathing purposes or any living room/kitchen used for bathing purpose will not be considered as a bathroom. Here, 'access of the household to bathroom' is defined in terms of the bathroom facility that can be used by the majority of the household members, irrespective of whether it is being used by them or not. For recording information in this item, it will first be ascertained whether the household has access to any bathroom or not. If the household has access to bathroom (i.e. there is bathroom facility that can be used by majority of the household members), then it is to be ascertained whether household's access to bathroom is for 'exclusive use of the household' or for 'common use of households in the building' or for 'public/community use with/without payment' or 'others'. The relevant information will be recorded in this item in terms of the following codes:

exclusive use of household.....	1
common use of households in the building.....	2
public/community use without payment.....	3
public/community use with payment.....	4
others.....	9
no access to bathroom.....	5

4.8.23.1 If the sample household has access to bathroom, one of the codes 1 to 4 and 9 will be recorded in item 27 depending upon the type of access of the household to bathroom. If the bathroom facility is for the exclusive use of the household, code 1 will be recorded in item 27. If the bathroom facility is shared by the household with one or more households in the building, code 2 will be recorded. If the household can use a bathroom facility which is for use of the households in the locality or for a specific section of the people, it will be considered that the household has access to public/community bathroom. If public/community bathroom can be used without making any payment, code 3 will be recorded and code 4 will be recorded if payment is required to use the public/community bathroom. If the household has access to bathroom for which any of the codes 1 to 4 is not applicable, code 9 will be recorded. For example, when the households of two separate buildings use the same bathroom, then code 9 will be recorded. If the household does not

have access to any bathroom, code 5 will be recorded. If more than one code is applicable for a household, the code appearing first in the code list will be reported.

4.8.24 Item 28: *whether hand washing facility available within the premises:* Washing of hands with water in situations like ‘before and after taking meal’, ‘after defecation’, ‘for removing dirt in hands’ etc. are important hygienic practice at personal level to remove soil, dirt, germs etc. from hands which prevent attack from diseases like diarrhea/other stomach problems etc. to a great extent. Information on ‘whether hand washing facility available within the premises’ will be collected in this item using the following codes:

yes	
with water and soap/detergent	1
with water and ash/mud/sand etc.....	2
with water only	3
no	4

4.8.24.1 For the purpose of the survey, washing of hands will mean cleaning of both the palms (front side as well as back side) and all the fingers of hands with water. For making entry in this item, it is to be ascertained whether majority of the household members have the facility of hand washing for washing their hands in the household premises. If majority of the household members have the handwashing facility within their premises with water and soap/detergent, then code 1 will be recorded. Here soap/detergent includes liquid soaps, hard soaps, hand sanitizers, wet and dry tissue papers etc. If a household reports that majority of its members have hand washing facility within their premises with water and ash/mud/sand etc., then code 2 will be recorded. Code 3 will be recorded if majority of the household members have hand washing facility within their premises with water only. If majority of the household members usually do not have hand washing facility within their premises, then code 4 will be recorded in this item.

4.8.25 Item 29: *agency made arrangement for collection of garbage of the household:* In this item information will be recorded regarding the agency that made arrangement to collect household garbage. These agencies make arrangement for accumulating garbage of the households at a common place. The agencies may be panchayet/municipality/corporation or resident/group of residents or charitable bodies/NGOs etc. The code structure for recording information in this item is as follows:

panchayet/municipality/corporation	1
resident/group of residents	2

any other arrangement	9
not known	3
no arrangement	4

4.8.25.1 If the households deposit their garbage in the community dumping spots built by panchayet/municipality/corporation, it will be considered that arrangement for collection of garbage of the household has been made by panchayet/municipality/corporation and code 1 will be recorded here. If panchayet/municipality/corporation made arrangement to collect garbage of the household on a regular basis from a fixed point in the locality or from the common place other than the community dumping spot (open area/street etc.) or made arrangement for door to door collection of household garbage, then also code 1 will be recorded.

4.8.25.2 If resident/group of residents made the arrangement for collecting household garbage through vat/bin or through door to door collection, code 2 will be recorded. 'Any other arrangement' (code 9) will include cases where arrangement for collection of garbage is made by charitable bodies, NGOs, etc. If the sample household is not aware of the agency which made the arrangement for collection of household garbage, code 3 will be recorded. If the household burns the garbage or if household garbage is dumped in a pit/manure pit/bio-gas plant of the household or thrown anywhere in the open areas, it will be considered that no arrangement is there to collect household garbage and code 4 will be recorded in such cases.

4.8.26 **Item 30: place of disposal of household garbage:** The place where household garbage (i.e. solid refuse and waste of the household) is usually deposited will be recorded in item 30 in terms of the following codes:

disposed to:

bio-gas plant or manure pit	1
household's individual dumping spot(s).....	2
community dumping spot (vat, container etc.).....	3
common place (dumping spot) other than community dumping spot (open area/street/open drain).....	4
others(codes other than 1 to 4 or thrown anywhere).....	9
not known.....	5

4.8.26.1 If the garbage is put in a bio-gas plant or manure pit, code 1 will be recorded. The bio-gas plant or manure pit may be for the use of the sample household only or for the common use of some households in the locality. When garbage is dumped in a household's individual dumping spot other than a bio-gas plant or manure pit, code 2 will be recorded. If households of a locality dump garbage in a community dumping spot (vat, container etc.), code 3 will be recorded. Community dumping spot (vat, container etc.) may be constructed by panchayet/municipality/corporation/NGOs/group of residents or may be vats/containers/bins arranged by panchayet/municipality/corporation/NGOs/group of residents.

4.8.26.2 If the households of a locality dump garbage in a common place (a dumping spot) other than community dumping spot like open area/street/open drain from where garbage is cleared by panchayet/municipality/corporation/NGOs/group of residents at regular interval, code 4 will be recorded. 'others' will include cases where garbage is dumped in places other than those mentioned in codes 1 to 4 or thrown anywhere and in such cases, code 9 will be recorded. If the household is not aware where the garbage of the household is dumped, code 5 will be recorded. For example, a household may make arrangement for removal of garbage from the household through an agency/person but the household is not aware where the garbage is deposited. If more than one code is applicable, the code which appears first in the code list will be recorded.

4.8.27 **Item 31: how frequently garbage is cleared:** Information in this item will be collected for the households with any of the codes 3 or 4 in item 30 i.e. for the households who dump household garbage in a community dumping spot (vat, container etc.) or in a common place (dumping spot) other than community dumping spot (open area/street/open drain) from where garbage is cleared by panchayet/municipality/corporation/NGOs/group of residents at regular interval. The frequency of clearance of garbage from these places will be recorded in terms of the following codes:

daily	1
not daily but at least once in a week	2
not even once in a week	3
not known	4

4.8.27.1 If garbage from the community dumping spot (vat, container etc.)/common place (dumping spot) other than community dumping spot (open area/street/open drain) is cleared daily, code 1 will be recorded. If garbage is not cleared daily but at least once in a week, code 2 will be recorded. If garbage is not cleared even once in a week, code 3 will be recorded. If the frequency of clearance of garbage is not known to the household, code 4 will be recorded.

4.8.28 Item 32: for rural areas, whether an all-weather road (i.e. usable during all seasons) is within a distance of 2 km from the place of living of the household: This item is to be asked to the household whose place of living is in rural areas. In this question, information on whether the place of living of the selected household is within 2 km of a road which is usable during all seasons will be collected using codes *yes - 1, no - 2*. In this survey, a road which is motorable all year round by the prevailing means of rural transport will be considered as a road which is usable during all seasons in rural area. If the selected household reports that their place of living is within 2 km of such a road, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.8.29 Item 33: for urban areas, whether the nearest public transport facility is within a distance of 0.5 km from the place of living of the household: If the place of living of the household is located in urban areas, information on whether the nearest public transport facility is within a distance of 0.5 km from the place of living of the household will be collected in this item using the codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. If the selected household reports that the nearest public transport facility is available within a distance of 0.5 km from the place of living of the household, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported. In this survey, public transport facility is defined as a shared passenger transport service that is available to the general public. Public transport includes cars, buses, trolleys, trams, trains, subways, and ferries that are shared by strangers without prior arrangement. Point to point shared taxi, auto, rickshaw, toto services will be considered as public transport. The public transport excludes taxis, car pools, and hired buses, which are not shared by strangers without prior arrangement; informal, unregulated modes of transport (para-transit), motorcycle taxis, three-wheelers, etc.

4.8.30 Item 34: distance of nearest accessible hospital with emergency services from the place of living of the household: Information on the distance of the nearest accessible hospital with emergency services from the place of living of the household will be collected in terms of the following codes:

less than 5km	1
5-10km	2
10-20km	3
greater than 20km	4
not known	5

4.8.30.1 If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible hospital with emergency services from the place of living of the household is less than 5 km, code 1 is to be reported. If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible hospital with emergency services from the place of living of the household is greater than 5 km but less than 10 km, code 2 is to be reported. If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible hospital with emergency services from the place of living of the household is greater than 10 km but less than 20 km, code 3 is to be reported. If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible hospital with emergency services from the place of

living of the household is greater than 20 km, code 4 is to be reported. If the sample household reports that the distance of the nearest accessible hospital with emergency services from the place of living of the household is not known to them, then code 5 is to be reported.

4.8.31 Item 35: distance of nearest accessible hospital without emergency services from the place of living of the household: Information on the distance of the nearest accessible hospital without emergency services from the place of living of the household will be collected in terms of the following codes:

less than 5km	1
5-10km	2
10-20km	3
greater than 20km	4
not known	5

4.8.31.1 If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible hospital without emergency services from the place of living of the household is less than 5 km, code 1 is to be reported. If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible hospital without emergency services from the place of living of the household is greater than 5 km but less than 10 km, code 2 is to be reported. If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible hospital without emergency services from the place of living of the household is greater than 10 km but less than 20 km, code 3 is to be reported. If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible hospital without emergency services from the place of living of the household is greater than 20 km, code 4 is to be reported. If the sample household reports that the distance of the nearest accessible hospital without emergency services from the place of living of the household is not known to them, then code 5 is to be reported.

4.8.32 Item 36: distance of nearest accessible public health centre/sub centre from the place of living of the household: Information on the distance of the nearest public health centre/sub centre from the place of living of the household will be collected in terms of the following codes:

less than 5km	1
5-10 km	2
10-20 km	3
greater than 20km	4
not known	5

4.8.32.1 If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible public health centre/sub centre from the place of living of the household is less than 5 km, code 1 is to be reported. If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible public health centre/sub centre from the place of living of the household is greater than 5 km but less

than 10 km, code 2 is to be reported. If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible public health centre/sub centre from the place of living of the household is greater than 10 km but less than 20 km, code 3 is to be reported. If the household reports the distance of the nearest accessible public health centre/sub centre from the place of living of the household is greater than 20 km, code 4 is to be reported. If the sample household reports that the distance of the nearest accessible public health centre/sub centre from the place of living of the household is not known to them, then code 5 is to be reported.

4.8.33 Item 37: distance from nearest open public space from the place of living of the household: Information on the distance of open public space from the dwelling unit of the household will be collected in this item using the following codes:

less than 500 mtrs.....	1
500 mtrs to 1 km.....	2
1-2 km.....	3
2-3 km.....	4
greater than 3 km	5
not known	6

4.8.33.1 In this survey, public space refers to all places that are publicly owned or of public use, accessible and enjoyable by all, free and without a profit motive, categorized into streets, open spaces and public facilities. Public space in general is defined as the meeting or gathering places that exist outside the home and workplace that are generally accessible by members of the public, and which foster resident interaction and opportunities for contact and proximity. This definition implies a higher level of community interaction and places a focus on public involvement rather than public ownership or stewardship. Open public space includes:

- **Parks:** Open space inside an urban territory that provide free air recreation and contact with nature. Their principal characteristic is the significant proportion of green area.
- **Recreational areas:** public areas that contribute to environmental preservation. Their main functions can be both ornamental and passive recreation. These include areas such as playgrounds, riverfronts, waterfronts, public beaches, etc.
- **Civic parks:** Open space created because of building agglomeration around an open area, which was later transformed into a representative civic area. They are characterized by considerable nature, specifically gardens and a good place for cultural events and passive recreation.
- **Squares and Plazas:** Open spaces created because of building agglomeration around an open area. Its main characteristics are the significant architectonic elements and

interaction between buildings and the open area. Squares are usually public spaces relevant to the city due to their location, territorial development, or cultural importance.

4.8.33.2 If the household report the distance of the nearest open public space from the place of living of the household is less than 500 mtrs, code 1 is to be reported. If the household report the distance of the nearest open public space from the place of living of the household is greater than 500 mtrs. but less than 1km, code 2 is to be reported. Other codes will be assigned accordingly. However, if the sample household reports that the distance of the nearest open public space from the place of living of the household is not known to them, then code 6 is to be reported.

4.8.34 Item 38: *whether any of the household member has access to any of these mass media (viz. internet, newspaper, magazine, radio, television):* Information on whether any member of the household has access to any of the mass media viz. newspaper, magazine, radio, television, internet or none of these on a regular basis is to be collected in this item. If at least one of the members of the household has access to any one of these mass medias, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.8.34.1 While recording the response, it is to be kept in mind that the use of internet may be via any device, like, desktop, laptop, palmtop, notebook, netbook, smart phone, tablets, etc. Also, use of ATM will not be considered as use of internet for obtaining information in this item. Further, internet is to be accessed by the household member himself/herself. Thus, if any member used internet services through another person (like booking of railway/air ticket/hotel through another person), those will not be considered as use of internet by the person.

4.8.35 Item 39: *whether the household is aware of Pradhan Mantri Awaas Yojana (PMAY):* This information is to be collected to get an idea about the awareness of the household for Pradhan Mantri Awaas Yojana (PMAY). If the household reports to be aware of PMAY, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported. The PMAY was launched in India during June, 2015. Under this scheme, government aims to provide about 5 Crore affordable homes to the people belonging to Economically Weaker Section (EWS) and Lower Income Group (LIG) categories by the year 2022. Also, under the scheme, the government will provide financial assistance to the poor home buyers, interest subsidy on home loan and direct subsidy on homes bought under the scheme.

4.8.36 Item 40: *whether the household is aware of Samagra Shiksha Scheme:* This information is to be collected to get an idea about the awareness of the household for Samagra Shiksha Scheme. If the household reports to be aware of Samagra Shiksha Scheme, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported. Samagra Shiksha Scheme is an overarching programme for the school education sector extending from pre-school to class 12. The scheme has been, therefore, prepared with the broader goal of improving school effectiveness measured in terms of equal opportunities for schooling and

equitable learning outcomes. It subsumes the three erstwhile Schemes of Sarva Shiksha Abhiyan (SSA), Rashtriya Madhyamik Shiksha Abhiyan (RMSA) and Teacher Education (TE).

4.8.37 Item 41: *whether all members of the household of age 5-17 years having access to primary/upper primary/secondary/high secondary schools:* Information on whether all members of the household of age 5-17 years have access to primary/upper primary/secondary/high secondary schools will be collected in this item using the codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. If all the members of the household of age 5-17 years reports to have access to any of primary/upper primary/secondary/high secondary schools, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be recorded.

4.8.38 Item 42: *whether the household is having broadband access within the premises:* Information on whether the household has access to broadband facility within the premises will be collected in this item using codes: *yes-1, no-2*. For this survey, broadband is defined as technologies that deliver advertised download speeds of at least 256 kbit/s. The main types of broadband services are: i) Fixed (wired) broadband network, such as DSL, cable modem, high speed leased lines, fibre to- the-home/building, powerline and other fixed (wired) broadband; ii) Terrestrial fixed (wireless) broadband network, such as WiMAX, fixed CDMA; iii) Satellite broadband network (via a satellite connection); iv) Mobile broadband network (at least 3G, e.g. UMTS) via a handset and v) Mobile broadband network (at least 3G, e.g. UMTS) via a card (e.g. integrated SIM card in a computer) or USB modem. If the household reports to be using any of the above broadband services, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be recorded.

4.8.39 Item 43: *whether household possesses any air-conditioner:* Information on whether the household possesses air-conditioner will be collected in this item using codes: *yes-1, no-2*. If the household reports to possess at least one air conditioner, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.8.40 Item 44: *number of air conditioner(s) (in whole number)(for code 1 in item 43):* If the household reports to have air conditioner in item 43, then the number of such air-conditioner possessed by the household will be reported in this item in whole number.

4.8.41 Item 45: *whether household possesses any air-cooler:* Information on whether the household possesses air-cooler will be collected in this item using codes: *yes-1, no-2*. If the household reports to possess at least one air cooler, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.8.42 Item 46: *number of air cooler(s) (in whole number)(for code 1 in item 45):* If the household reports to have air cooler in item 45, then the number of such air-coolers possessed by the household will be reported in this item in whole number.

4.9 Block 4.1: Age of air conditioner(s) possessed by the household

4.9.1 For each of the air conditioners in possession of the household, the age of the air conditioner is to be reported in this block in whole number and in nearest integer years. This block will be filled up only when there exists a positive entry in item 44 of block 4. In column 1 serial number of the air conditioner is to be reported and in column 2, age of that air conditioner is to be reported. The total number of filled in row of this block should be equal to the positive entry made in item 44 of block 4.

4.10 Block 4.2: Age of air cooler(s) possessed by the household

4.10.1 For each of the air coolers in possession of the household, the age of the air cooler is to be reported in this block in whole number and in nearest integer years. This block will be filled up only when there exists a positive entry in item 46 of block 4. In column one serial number of the air cooler is to be reported and in column 2, age of that air cooler is to be reported. The total number of filled in row of this block should be equal to the positive entry made in item 46 of block 4.

4.11 Block 5: Person level information on education and ICT skills for household members

4.11.1 Block 5 will be used for recording different characteristics regarding enrolment in formal or non-formal education viz. status of enrolment, current level of enrolment, age at which first enrolled, type of course, type of institution etc along with particulars of vocational/technical training attended by household members of age 3-35 years and to record the ICT skills of the household members of age 15 years and above.

4.11.2 **Item 1: serial no. [as in col. 1, block 3]:** The serial number of the household members of age ≥ 3 years will be copied in this block in the same order as they appear in block 3. In each column detail of one person will be recorded. Three columns have been provided to record for three persons, but if this is found to be insufficient for any household, extra sheets may be used. Information about extra sheet, if any, must be recorded in item 3 of block 2.

4.11.3 **Item 2: age (years) [as in col. 5, block 3]:** The age of the person as recorded in column 5 of block 3 is to be copied here.

4.11.4 **Item 3: broad usual principal activity status:** The broad usual principal activity status of the household member is to be recorded in terms of the following codes:

in employment	1
not in employment	2

4.11.4.1 Code 1 is to be recorded if code reported in column 8 of block 3 is any of 11, 12, 21, 31, 41 or 51 and code 2 is reported if code reported in column 8 of block 3 is any of 81, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 97 or 99.

For household members of age 3-35 years, information on item 4, item 4.1 and 4.2 are to be collected.

4.11.5 **Item 4: status of enrolment in education:** This item will be filled in for persons of age 3-35 years. For persons of other ages this item will be left blank. The codes for this item are as follows:

never enrolled	1
ever enrolled but not currently enrolled	2
currently enrolled	3

4.11.5.1 Code 1 will be recorded to persons who were never enrolled in any educational institution. For assigning codes 2 to 3, persons enrolled in any educational institution for formal schooling and other than formal schooling will be considered (e.g., NFEC, TLC, AEC, etc.). For the persons who were enrolled in any educational institution in some past academic year but currently not enrolled, code 2 will be assigned and for those who are enrolled in the current academic year will be assigned code 3.

4.11.6 **Item 4.1: age at which first enrolled in education (for code 2 or 3 in item 4):** For the household member who reports to have ever been enrolled in education, information on the age at first enrolment in education i.e. the age in completed years, at which the person was first enrolled for any formal or non-formal education is to be collected in this question.

4.11.7 **Item 4.2: whether ever enrolled in Class I (yes-1, no-2)(for code 2 or 3 in item 4):** For the household member who reports to have ever been enrolled in education information on whether he was ever enrolled in Class I will be collected in this item. Code 1 is to be recorded if the household member reports to have been ever enrolled in Class I, otherwise code 2 is to be recorded.

For code 3 in item 4 i.e. for currently enrolled persons of age 3-35 years, information on items 5.1 to 5.10.2 are to be collected.

4.11.8 **Item 5.1: level of current enrolment in education:** The level of current enrolment of the household member currently enrolled will be recorded in this item with respect to the formal or non formal education. The codes for recording level of current enrolment are as follows:

level of current enrolment	code	level of current enrolment	code
non formal education			
<i>NFEC</i>	...01	<i>secondary (IX to X)</i>	...08
<i>TLC,AEC</i>	...02	<i>higher secondary (XI to XII)</i>	...10
<i>play school/crèche</i>	...03	<i>diploma /certificate course (upto secondary)</i>	...11
others	...04	<i>diploma /certificate course (higher secondary)</i>	...12
formal education			
<i>pre-primary (nursery/kindergarten etc)</i>	...05	<i>graduate</i>	...14
<i>primary (class I to V)</i>	...06	<i>post graduate and above</i>	...15
<i>upper primary/middle (VI to VIII)</i>	...07		

4.11.8.1 Persons who are enlisted in non formal education will be assigned codes 01, 02, 03 or 04 as the case may be. Those who are currently enlisted in ‘Non-formal Education Courses (NFEC)’ will be given code 01 and those who are currently enlisted in ‘Total Literacy Campaign (TLC)’ or ‘Adult Education Centres (AEC)’ will be given code 02. Code 03 will be assigned to those who are currently enlisted in play school, crèche;. If the household member is currently enlisted in any other non formal education code 04 is to be assigned.

4.11.8.2 If the household member is currently enlisted in formal pre-primary education viz. nursery, kinder garden etc, code 05 is to be recorded. If the household member is currently enlisted in any of Class I to V i.e. of primary level, code 06 is to be assigned. If the household member is currently enlisted in any of Class VI to VIII i.e. of upper primary/middle level, code 07 is to be assigned. If the household member is currently enlisted in any of Class IX to X i.e. of secondary level, code 08 is to be assigned. If the household member is currently enlisted in any of Class XI to XII i.e. of higher secondary level, code 10 is to be assigned.

4.11.8.3 If the household member is currently enlisted in any diploma or certificate course upto secondary level i.e. upto Class X, code 11 is to be assigned. If the household member is currently enlisted in any diploma or certificate course upto higher secondary level i.e. upto Class XII, code 12 is to be assigned. If the household member is currently enlisted in any diploma or certificate course in graduation and above level, code 13 is to be assigned. If the household member is currently enlisted in graduation level, code 14 is to be assigned. If the household member is currently enlisted in post graduation and above level, code 15 is to be assigned. It is to be noted that if more than one code is applicable for a

person i.e. if the household member is enrolled at two different levels of formal or non formal education, the highest level of enrolment is to be considered.

4.11.9 Item 5.2: type of course in which currently enrolled: Entry in this item is to be made for the persons with code 3 in item 4(i.e. for currently enrolled persons). The codes for recording type of course are as follows:

general	1
technical/professional	2
vocational	3
others	4

4.11.9.1 General, Technical, Professional and Vocational courses are conducted by schools, colleges, universities, deemed universities, open universities and other institutes authorised by competent authorities like All India Council of Technical Education (AICTE), Medical Council of India (MCI), etc. and leads to degree/diploma/certificates etc. If the household member is currently enrolled in some general courses viz. studying in any class upto X, studying humanities or science or commerce, code 1 will be recorded. If the household member is currently enrolled in some technical courses viz. studying in medicine, engineering, agriculture, computer, management, education, fine arts/crafts, BCA, MCA etc. approved by All India Council of Technical Education (AICTE), or currently enrolled in some professional courses viz. studying in Chartered accountancy(CA), cost and works accountant (CWA), Company secretary(CS), law etc. approved by institutes like The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India, The Institute of Cost and Works Accountants of India, The Institute of Company Secretaries of India, Actuarial Society of India, etc. code 2 is to be reported. If the household member is currently enrolled in some vocational training recognised by Industrial Training Institute (ITI), code 3 is to be reported. If the household member is currently enrolled in any other course, code 4 is to be reported.

4.11.10 Item 5.3: type of institution in which enrolled: The information on the type of institution in which the household member is currently enrolled will be collected from this item in terms of the following codes:

Government	1
private aided by Government	2
private un-aided	3
not known	4

4.11.10.1 If the household member is currently enrolled in any schools/ institutions run by central or state Governments or public sector undertakings or autonomous organisations or municipal corporations or municipal committees or notified area committees or zilla

parishads or panchayat samitis or cantonment boards etc. which are completely financed by the Government, code 1 is to be reported. It may be noted that a Government institution may be run by either the Government directly or through a governing body/managing committee, etc., set-up by the Government.

4.11.10.2 If the household member is currently enrolled in a private institution which is run by an individual or a private organisation but receives maintenance grant from Government, code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.10.3 If the household member is currently enrolled in a private institution which is managed by an individual or a private organisation and not receiving maintenance grant from Government, code 3 is to be reported.

4.11.10.4 If the informant reports to have no knowledge about the type of institution in which he/she is currently enrolled code 4 is to be recorded.

4.11.11 **Item 5.4.1: class in which enrolled (for codes 06 -08 or 10 in item 5.1):** This item is to be filled up for those household members who are currently enrolled in education and whose level of enrolment in education is any of class I to higher secondary i.e. for code 3 in item 4 and codes 06 -08 or 10 in item 5.1.

4.11.11.1 The codes to be used for recording class in which enrolled are given as follows:

Class in which enrolled:	
class I.....	01
class II.....	02
class III.....	03
class IV.....	04
class V.....	05
class VI.....	06
class VII.....	07
class VIII	08
class IX.....	09
class X.....	10
class XI.....	11
class XII.....	12

4.11.12 **Item 5.4.2: whether the class of enrolment is same as that of the previous academic year (for codes 06 -08 or 10 in item 5.1):** In this item, it is to be enquired whether the household member who is currently enrolled in any of the levels primary to higher secondary is in the same class as he/she was in the previous year in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. If the household member reports to be currently enrolled in the same class as he/she was in the previous year, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.13 **Item 5.5: whether ever enrolled in pre-primary education (for codes 01 in item 5.4.1):** This item is to be filled up for those household members who are currently enrolled in class I (i.e. for code 3 in item 4 and codes 01 in item 5.4.1). Entry in this item will be reported in terms of codes: *yes-1 and no-2*. If the person enrolled in primary was ever enrolled in pre-primary education viz. pre- nursery, nursery, kinder garden (KG), lower kinder garden (LKG), upper kinder garden (UKG) etc.; code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.14 **Item 5.6.1: whether currently attending the course reported in items 5.1 and 5.2:** Entry in this item is to be made for the persons with code 3 in item 4 (i.e. for currently enrolled persons) in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. It is to be recorded from them whether they are attending any non-formal or formal education as in 5.1 or any type of course viz. general/ technical/ professional/ vocational/others as in 5.2. If the household member, who is currently enrolled, reports that he/she is currently attending that course in education, code 1 is to be reported. If the household member, who is currently enrolled in education, reports that he/she is currently not attending that course, code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.15 **Item 5.6.2: whether currently attending any other course in education (not reported in item 5.1 and 5.2):** Entry in this item is to be made for the persons with code 3 in item 4 (i.e. for currently enrolled persons) it is to be recorded whether they are attending any other course in apart from those reported either in item 5.1 or 5.2) in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. If the household member who is currently enrolled reports currently attending any other course in education, code 1 is to be reported. If the household member who is currently enrolled in education reports currently not attending any other course, code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.16 **Item 5.7: for code 2 both in item 5.6.1 and 5.6.2, whether attended any course in education during last 12 months:** For the household members who are currently enrolled in education but not currently attending any course in education (i.e. with code 2 in either in item 5.6.1 or in 5.6.2), information is to be collected if he/she has attended any course in education during last 12 months in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. If the household member reports to have attended any course in education during last 12 months, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.17 **Item 5.8: whether currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education:** For the household members currently enrolled in education, information is to be collected if he/she is currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education in terms of codes: *yes: formal - 1, non-formal - 2, no - 3*. If the household member reports to be currently receiving any training through which knowledge and skills for the world of work is acquired, and which makes individuals employable for a broad range of occupations in various industries and other economic sectors, code 1 or 2 are applicable.

4.11.17.1 If the household member reports to be currently receiving any structured training programmes outside school, college, university, recognised institutions leading to diploma/certificate, i.e. he/she is currently receiving any formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education, code 1 is to be reported.

4.11.17.2 If the household member reports to be currently receiving any training which is not structured and does not lead to certification i.e., he/she is currently receiving any non-formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education, code 2 is to be reported. Non formal vocational/technical training occurs in daily life, in the family, in the workplace, in communities, and through the interests and activities of individuals. If the household member reports not to be currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education, code 3 is to be recorded.

4.11.18 Item 5.9: for code 3 in item 5.8, whether received any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months: For the household members currently enrolled in education but not currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education (i.e. with code 3 in item 5.8), information is to be collected whether he/she has received any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months in terms of codes: *yes: formal - 1, non-formal - 2, no - 3*. If the household member reports to have received any training through which knowledge and skills for the world of work is acquired, and which makes individuals employable for a broad range of occupations in various industries and other economic sectors, code 1 or 2 are applicable.

4.11.18.1 If the household member reports to have received any structured training programmes outside school, college, university, recognised institutions leading to diploma/certificate during last 12 months, i.e. he/she has received any formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months, code 1 is to be reported.

4.11.18.2 If the household member reports to have received any training which is not structured and does not lead to certification during last 12 months i.e., he/she is currently receiving any non-formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months, code 2 is to be reported. Non formal vocational/technical training occurs in daily life, in the family, in the workplace, in communities, and through the interests and activities of individuals.

4.11.18.3 If the household member reports not to have not received any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months, code 3 is to be recorded.

4.11.19 Item 5.10.1: whether the household member worked for at least 1 hour on any day during last 7 days preceding the date of survey: Each of the household member will be asked if he/she performed some economic activity leading to pay or profit, for at least 1

hour during last 7 days preceding the date of survey and information will be recorded in terms of codes: *yes* - 1, *no* - 2. If the household member reports to have worked for at least 1 hour during last 7 days preceding the date of survey, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported. The concept and definition of economic activity is given in Chapter 1.

4.11.20 Item 5.10.2:for code 2 in item 5.10.1 and code 3 in item 5.8 and code 2 both in item 5.6.1 and 5.6.2; what the household member generally did during last 7 days preceding the date of survey:For the household member who neither worked for at least 1 hour during last 7 days preceding the date of survey, nor currently attending any course in education, nor currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education (i.e. for code 2 item 5.10.1 and code 2 is reported both in item 5.6.1and 5.6.2 and code 3 is reported in item 5.8)information is to be collected about what the household member generally did during last 7 days preceding the date of survey. The response is to be recorded in terms of the following codes:

seeking/available for work	1
engaged in voluntary work in other household/enterprise	2
engaged in social/political work voluntarily	3
attending domestic duties	4
not able to work due to health condition	5
spending leisure time	6
others	9

4.11.20.1 If the household member reports to be seeking work through employment exchange, intermediaries, friends or relatives or by making applications to prospective employers or expressed their willingness or availability for work under the prevailing condition of work and remuneration during last 7 days, code 1 is to be reported. If the household member reports to be engaged in work of other household or enterprise run by other household, which is voluntary in nature during last 7 days, code 2 is to be reported. If the household member reports to be engaged in some voluntary work in order to serve the society, for e.g. conducting blood donation campaign, teaching poor children at school without pay, or in some political work for e.g. attending rallies/meetings of political parties, distributing leaflets etc without any remuneration during last 7 days, code 3 is to be reported. If the household member reports to be mainly engaged in household chores during last 7 days, code 4 is to be reported. Code 5 is to be reported if the household member reports that he/she is unable to work due to certain illness, disability etc. during last 7 days, code 5 is to be reported. Code 6 is to be recorded if the household member reports to have spent leisure time during last 7 days.If the household member reports not to be engaged in any of the activities listed above during last 7 days, code 9 is to be reported. It is to be noted that if more than one code is applicable for a particular household member, the code appearing first in code list is to be considered.

For code 2 in item 4 (i.e. for ever enrolled but currently not enrolled persons) information on item 6.1 to item 6.6.2 are to be collected.

4.11.21 **Item 6.1: level of last enrolment in education:** The level of last enrolment of the household member who were ever enrolled but currently not enrolled in any formal or non-formal education is to be reported in terms of the following codes:

level of last enrolment	code	level of last enrolment	code
non formal education			
<i>NFEC</i>	...01	<i>secondary (IX to X)</i>	...08
<i>TLC, AEC</i>	...02	<i>higher secondary (XI to XII)</i>	...10
<i>play school/crèche</i>	...03	<i>diploma /certificate course (upto secondary)</i>	...11
others	...04	<i>diploma /certificate course (higher secondary)</i>	...12
formal education			
<i>pre-primary (nursery/kindergarten etc)</i>	...05	<i>graduate</i>	...14
<i>primary (class I to V)</i>	...06	<i>post graduate and above</i>	...15
<i>upper primary/middle (VI to VIII)</i>	...07		

4.11.21.1 Persons who were last enlisted in non-formal education will be assigned codes 01, 02, 03 or 04 as the case may be. Those who were last enlisted in 'Non-formal Education Courses (NFEC)' will be given code 01 and those who were last enlisted in 'Total Literacy Campaign (TLC)' or 'Adult Education Centres (AEC)' will be given code 02. Code 03 will be assigned to those were last enlisted in other non-formal education viz. play school, crèche, otherwise 04 is to be assigned if the household member was last enlisted in any other non-formal education.

4.11.21.2 If the household member was last enlisted in formal pre-primary education viz. nursery, kinder garden etc, code 05 is to be recorded. If the household member was last enlisted in any of Class I to V i.e. of primary level, code 06 is to be assigned. If the household member was last enlisted in any of Class VI to VIII i.e. of upper primary/middle level, code 07 is to be assigned. If the household member was last enlisted in any of Class IX to X i.e. of secondary level, code 08 is to be assigned. If the household member was last enlisted in any of Class XI to XII i.e. of higher secondary level, code 10 is to be assigned.

4.11.21.3 If the household member was last enlisted in any diploma or certificate course upto secondary level i.e. upto Class X, code 11 is to be assigned. If the household member was last enlisted in any diploma or certificate course upto higher secondary level i.e. upto Class XII, code 12 is to be assigned. If the household member was last enlisted in any diploma or certificate course in graduation and above level, code 13 is to be assigned. If the household member was last enlisted in graduation level, code 14 is to be assigned. If the household member was last enlisted in post-graduation and above level, code 15 is to be assigned.

4.11.21.4 It is to be noted that if more than one code is applicable for a person i.e. if the household member was last enrolled at two different levels of formal or non-formal education, the highest level of last enrolment is to be considered.

4.11.22 **Item 6.2: class in which last enrolled (for codes 06 - 08 or 10 in item 6.1):** For the household member who was last enrolled in any of the levels primary to higher secondary (i.e. for code 06 -08 or 10 against that member in item 6.1), the class/grade in which the household member was last enrolled in is to be collected in terms of the following codes:

Class in which enrolled:	
class I.....	01
class II.....	02
class III.....	03
class IV.....	04
class V.....	05
class VI.....	06
class VII.....	07
class VIII	08
class IX.....	09
class X.....	10
class XI.....	11
class XII.....	12

4.11.22.1 If the code 06 is reported in item 6.1, any of the codes 01 to 05 is to be reported depending on which class the household member was last enrolled in. Similarly, if the code 07 is reported in item 6.1, any of the codes 06 to 08 is to be reported depending on which class the household member was last enrolled in. If the code 07 is reported in item 6.1, any of the codes 06 to 08 is to be reported depending on which class the household member was last enrolled in. Again, if the code 08 is reported in item 6.1, any of the codes 09 to 12 is to be reported depending on which class the household member was last enrolled in.

4.11.23 **Item 6.3: whether attended any course in education during last 12 months:** For the household members who were ever enrolled in education but not currently not enrolled

in education (i.e. with code 2 in item 4), information is to be collected whether he/she has attended any course in education during last 12 months in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. If the household member reports to have attended any course in education during last 12 months, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.24 Item 6.4: *whether currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education:* For the household members who were ever enrolled in education but currently not enrolled in education (i.e. with code 2 in item 4), information is to be collected if he/she is currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education in terms of codes: *yes: formal - 1, non-formal - 2, no - 3*. If the household member reports to be currently receiving any training through which knowledge and skills for the world of work is acquired, and which makes individuals employable for a broad range of occupations in various industries and other economic sectors, code 1 or 2 are applicable.

4.11.24.1 If the household member reports to be currently receiving any structured training programmes outside school, college, university, recognised institutions leading to diploma/certificate, i.e. he/she is currently receiving any formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education, code 1 is to be reported.

4.11.24.2 If the household member reports to be currently receiving any training which is not structured and does not lead to certification i.e., he/she is currently receiving any non-formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education, code 2 is to be reported. Non formal vocational/technical training occurs in daily life, in the family, in the workplace, in communities, and through the interests and activities of individuals. If the household member reports not to be currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education, code 3 is to be recorded.

4.11.25 Item 6.5: *whether received any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months (for code 3 in item 6.4):* For the household members who were ever enrolled but currently not enrolled in any formal or non-formal education, and not currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education (i.e. with entry 3 in item 6.4), it is to be further enquired whether he/she has received any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months in terms of codes: *yes: formal - 1, non-formal - 2, no - 3*. If the household member reports to have received any training through which knowledge and skills for the world of work is acquired, and which makes individuals employable for a broad range of occupations in various industries and other economic sectors, code 1 or 2 are applicable.

4.11.25.1 If the household member reports to have received any structured training programmes outside school, college, university, recognised institutions leading to diploma/certificate during last 12 months, i.e. he/she has received any formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months, code 1 is to be reported.

4.11.25.2 If the household member reports to have received any training which is not structured and does not lead to certification during last 12 months i.e., he/she is currently receiving any non-formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months, code 2 is to be reported. Non formal vocational/technical training occurs in daily life, in the family, in the workplace, in communities, and through the interests and activities of individuals. If the household member reports not to have not received any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months, code 3 is to be recorded.

4.11.26 **Item 6.6.1: whether the household member worked for at least 1 hour on any day during last 7 days preceding the date of survey:** In this item the household members who were ever enrolled but currently not enrolled will be asked if he/she has performed some economic activity leading to pay or profit, for at least 1 hour during last 7 days preceding the date of survey and information will be recorded in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no- 2*. If the household member reports to have worked for at least 1 hour during last 7 days preceding the date of survey, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported. The concept and definition of economic activity is given in Chapter 1.

4.11.27 **Item 6.6.2: for code 2 in item 6.6.1 and code 3 in item 6.4, What the household member generally did during last 7 days preceding the date of survey:** For the household member who neither worked for at least 1 hour during last 7 days preceding the date of survey, nor currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education (i.e. for code 2 item 6.6.1 and code 3 is reported in item 6.4), information is to be collected about what the household member generally did during last 7 days preceding the date of survey. The response is to be recorded in terms of the following codes:

seeking/available for work	1
engaged in voluntary work in other household/enterprise	2
engaged in social/political work voluntarily	3
attending domestic duties	4
not able to work due to health condition	5
spending leisure time	6
others	9

4.11.27.1 If the household member reports to be seeking work through employment exchange, intermediaries, friends or relatives or by making applications to prospective employers or expressed their willingness or availability for work under the prevailing condition of work and remuneration during last 7 days, code 1 is to be reported. If the household member reports to be engaged in work of other household or enterprise run by other household, which is voluntary in nature during last 7 days, code 2 is to be reported. If the household member reports to be engaged in some voluntary work in order to serve the

society, for e.g. conducting blood donation campaign, poor children at school without pay, or in some political work for e.g. attending rallies/meetings of political parties, distributing leaflets etc without any remuneration during last 7 days, code 3 is to be reported. If the household member reports to be mainly engaged in household chores during last 7 days, code 4 is to be reported. Code 5 is to be reported if the household member reports that he/she is unable to work due to certain illness, disability etc. during last 7 days, code 5 is to be reported. Code 6 is to be recorded if the household member reports to have spent leisure time during last 7 days. If the household member reports not to be engaged in any of the activities listed above during last 7 days, code 9 is to be reported. It is to be noted that if more than one code is applicable for a particular household member, the code appearing first in code list is to be considered.

For code 1 in item 4 (i.e. for never enrolled persons) information on items 7.1 to 7.3.2 are to be collected.

4.11.28 Item 7.1: whether currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education: For the household members who were never enrolled in any formal or non-formal education (i.e. with code 1 in item 4), information is to be collected if he/she is currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education in terms of codes: *yes: formal - 1, non-formal - 2, no - 3*. If the household member reports to be currently receiving any training through which knowledge and skills for the world of work is acquired, and which makes individuals employable for a broad range of occupations in various industries and other economic sectors, code 1 or 2 are applicable. If the household member reports to be currently receiving any structured training programmes outside school, college, university, recognised institutions leading to diploma/certificate, i.e. he/she is currently receiving any formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education, code 1 is to be reported.

4.11.28.1 If the household member reports to be currently receiving any training which is not structured and does not lead to certification i.e. he/she is currently receiving any non formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education, code 2 is to be reported. Non formal vocational/technical training occurs in daily life, in the family, in the workplace, in communities, and through the interests and activities of individuals. If the household member reports not to be currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education, code 3 is to be recorded.

4.11.29 Item 7.2: for code 3 in item 7.1, whether received any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months: For the household members who were never enrolled in any formal or non-formal education and currently not receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education (i.e. with code 1 in item 4 and code 3 in item 7.1), information is to be further collected whether he/she has received any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months in terms of codes: *yes: formal - 1, non-formal - 2, no - 3*. If the household

member reports to have received any training through which knowledge and skills for the world of work is acquired, and which makes individuals employable for a broad range of occupations in various industries and other economic sectors, code 1 or 2 are applicable.

4.11.29.1 If the household member reports to have received any structured training programmes outside school, college, university, recognised institutions leading to diploma/certificate during last 12 months, i.e. he/she has received any formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months, code 1 is to be reported.

4.11.29.2 If the household member reports to have received any training which is not structured and does not lead to certification during last 12 months i.e. he/she is currently receiving any non formal vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months, code 2 is to be reported. Non formal vocational/technical training occurs in daily life, in the family, in the workplace, in communities, and through the interests and activities of individuals. If the household member reports not to have not received any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education during last 12 months, code 3 is to be recorded.

4.11.30 **Item 7.3.1:whether the household member worked for at least 1 hour on any day during last 7 days preceding the date of survey:** In this item information is to be collected whether the household members who were never enrolled has performed some economic activity leading to pay or profit, for at least 1 hour during last 7 days preceding the date of survey information will be recorded in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no- 2*. If the household member reports to have worked for at least 1 hour during last 7 days preceding the date of survey, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.31 **Item 7.3.2:for code 2 in item 7.3.1 and code 3 in item 7.1, what the household member generally did during last 7 days preceding the date of survey:** For the household member who neither worked for at least 1 hour during last 7 days preceding the date of survey, nor currently receiving any vocational/technical training outside the coverage of education (i.e. for code 2 item 7.3.1 and code 3 is reported in item 7.1), information is to be collected about what the household member generally did during last 7 days preceding the date of survey. The response is to be recorded in terms of the following codes:

seeking/available for work	1
engaged in voluntary work in other household/enterprise	2
engaged in social/political work voluntarily	3
attending domestic duties	4
not able to work due to health condition	5
spending leisure time	6
others	9

4.11.31.1 If the household member reports to be seeking work through employment exchange, intermediaries, friends or relatives or by making applications to prospective employers or expressed their willingness or availability for work under the prevailing condition of work and remuneration during last 7 days, code 1 is to be reported. If the household member reports to be engaged in work of other household or enterprise run by other household, which is voluntary in nature during last 7 days, code 2 is to be reported. If the household member reports to be engaged in some voluntary work in order to serve the society, for e.g. conducting blood donation campaign, poor children at school without pay, or in some political work for e.g. attending rallies/meetings of political parties, distributing leaflets etc without any remuneration during last 7 days, code 3 is to be reported. If the household member reports to be mainly engaged in household chores during last 7 days, code 4 is to be reported. Code 5 is to be reported if the household member reports that he/she is unable to work due to certain illness, disability etc during last 7 days, code 5 is to be reported. Code 6 is to be recorded if the household member reports to have spent leisure time during last 7 days. If the household member reports not to be engaged in any of the activities listed above during last 7 days, code 9 is to be reported. It is to be noted that if more than one code is applicable for a particular household member, the code appearing first in code list is to be considered.

For persons of age 15 years and above, information on items 8 to 16 are to be collected.

4.11.32 For collecting information in item 8 to 16, it is to be noted that a computer refers to a desktop computer, a laptop (portable) computer, smart phones, tablet (or similar handheld computer).

4.11.32.1 **Item 8: *whether able to copy or move a file or folder (yes - 1, no - 2)***: Each of the household members of age 15 years and above will be asked whether he/she is able to copy or move a file or folder. If he/she is able to do so, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.32.2 **Item 9: *whether able to use the copy and paste tools to duplicate or move information within a document (yes - 1, no - 2)***: Each of the household members of age 15 years and above will be asked whether he/she is able to use the copy and paste tools to duplicate or move information within a document. If he/she is able to do so, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.32.3 **Item 10: *whether able to send e-mails with attached files (e.g. document, pictures and video)***: Each of the household members of age 15 years and above will be asked whether he/she is able to send e-mails with attached files (e.g. document, pictures and video). If he/she is able to do so, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.32.4 **Item 11: *whether able to use basic arithmetic formulae in a spreadsheet (yes - 1, no - 2)*** Each of the household members of age 15 years and above will be asked whether he/she is able to use basic arithmetic formulae in a spreadsheet. If he/she is able to do so, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.32.5 **Item 12: *whether able to connect and install new devices (e.g. modem, camera, printer) (yes - 1, no - 2)***: Each of the household members of age 15 years and above will be asked whether he/she is able to connect and install new devices (e.g. modem, camera, printer). If he/she is able to do so, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.32.6 **Item 13: *whether able to find, download, install and configure software (yes - 1, no - 2)***: Each of the household members of age 15 years and above will be asked whether he/she is able to find, download, install and configure software. If he/she is able to do so, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.32.7 **Item 14: *whether able to create electronic presentations with presentation software (including text, images, sound, video or charts) (yes - 1, no - 2)***: Each of the household members of age 15 years and above will be asked whether he/she is able to create electronic presentations with presentation software (including text, images, sound, video or charts). If he/she is able to do so, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.32.8 **Item 15: *whether able to transfer files between a computer and other devices (yes - 1, no - 2)***: Each of the household members of age 15 years and above will be asked whether he/she is able to transfer files between a computer and other devices. If he/she is able to do so, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.11.32.9 **Item 16: *whether able to write a computer program using a specialised programming language (yes - 1, no - 2)***: Each of the household members of age 15 years and above will be asked whether he/she is able to write a computer program using a specialised programming language. If he/she is able to do so, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.12 Block 6: Purchase/construction of new houses /flats by households for residential purpose

4.12.1 Block 6 will be used for recording whether the household has purchased/constructed any new house/flat for *residential purpose after 31st March, 2014 for the first time which is*

ready for possession and if they purchased/constructed such house/flat, some particulars of that house/flat along with source of finance availed for the same.

4.12.2 Item 1: *whether the household has purchased/constructed any new house/flat after 31st March, 2014 for residential purpose*: For the selected household it is to be enquired whether the household has constructed/purchased any new house/flat (which is ready for possession) after 31st March 2014 for residential purpose in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. If the household reports to have constructed/purchased any new house/flat for residential purpose after 31st March 2014 which is ready for possession as on the date of survey, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported. It is to be noted that construction/purchase of house/flat by the household for use as an enterprise will not be considered here and in such case code 2 is to be reported. The constructions would mean constructions irrespective of whether lying vacant or occupied. The constructions will exclude repair and maintenance (major/minor) of the structure and construction undertaken by the household as an enterprise.

4.12.3.1 Item 2.1: *number of newly purchased/constructed house(s)/flat(s) after 31st March, 2014 in rural area*: If the household reports to have constructed/purchased any new house/flat for residential purpose after 31st March 2014 which is ready for possession as on the date of survey (i.e. households with entry 1 in item 1), the number of such constructed/purchased new house/flat for residential purpose in rural area is to be recorded here in whole number. Entry 0 is to be reported in item 2.1 if there is no newly purchased/constructed house/flat in rural area.

4.12.3.2 Item 2.2: *number of newly purchased/constructed house(s)/flat(s) after 31st March, 2014 in urban area*: If the household reports to have constructed/purchased any new house/flat for residential purpose after 31st March 2014 which is ready for possession as on the date of survey (i.e. households with entry 1 in item 1), the number of such constructed/purchased new house/flat for residential purpose in urban area is to be recorded here in whole number. Entry 0 is to be reported in item 2.2 if there is no newly purchased/constructed house/flat in urban area.

4.12.3.3 Item 2.3: *total number of newly purchased/constructed house(s)/flat(s) after 31st March, 2014*: If the household reports to have constructed/purchased any new house/flat for residential purpose after 31st March 2014 which is ready for possession as on the date of survey (i.e. households with entry 1 in item 1), the total number of such constructed/purchased new house/flat for residential purpose in rural and urban area as reported in item 2.3 by adding entries in item 2.1 and 2.2.

4.12.4 Item 3: *whether any of the newly purchased/constructed house(s)/flat(s) reported in any of items 2.1 or 2.2 was owned by the household for the first time*: Information on whether any of the newly purchased/constructed house(s)/flat(s) reported in any of items 2.1 or 2.2 was owned by the household for the first time will be collected in this item in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. If any of the newly purchased/constructed house(s)/flat(s)

reported in any of items 2.1 or 2.2 was owned by the household for the first time, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

If code 1 in item 3, information on items 4 and 5 will be collected in respect of the newly purchased/constructed house/flat owned by the household for the first time.

4.12.5 Item 4: *whether the newly purchased/constructed house/flat is in rural or urban area:* Information on whether the newly purchased/constructed house/flat is in rural or urban area will be collected in this item in terms of codes: *rural - 1, urban - 2*. If the household reports that the newly purchased/constructed house/flat is in rural area, code 1 is to be reported. If the household reports that the newly purchased/constructed house/flat is in urban area, code 2 is to be reported.

4.12.6 Item 5: *whether the newly purchased/constructed house/flat is currently owned (including leased-out) by the household:* Information on whether the newly purchased/constructed house/flat is currently owned (including leased-out) by the household will be collected in this item in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. If the household reports to be currently owning the newly purchased/constructed house/flat, code 1 is to be reported, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

If code 1 in item 5, information on items 6 to 17 will be collected in respect of the newly constructed/purchased house/flat currently owned by the household.

If code 1 in item 5, go to block 7

4.12.7 Item 6: *type of the newly purchased/constructed house/flat:* Type of each of the newly purchased/constructed house/flat of the household will be recorded in this item in terms of the following codes:

independent house	1
flat	2
others	3

4.12.7.1 Definition of independent house and flat is given in Chapter One. If the dwelling unit and the entire structure of the house are physically the same, it is considered as an independent house. The dwelling unit of a household is considered as a flat if it is a part of a structure which is shared with at least one other household and the dwelling unit has housing facilities of water supply, bathroom and latrine, which are used exclusively by the

household or shared with other households residing in that structure. If the facilities of water supply, bathroom and latrine, created for the households of the structure where the dwelling unit of the sample household is located, are shared with households residing in other structures, in such cases also such dwelling units will be considered as flat. If the households residing in flat-like structure without having all the facilities of water supply, bathroom and latrine, these dwelling units will not be classified as flat and will be treated as others (code 9 will be recorded for such dwelling units).

4.12.7.2 Huts/tenements which are poorly built with materials like grass, leaves, reeds, etc., will be categorised as 'others', irrespective of whether only one or more than one household reside therein. Sometimes a series of structures may be found along a street that are joined with one another by common walls and appears like a continuous structure. These structures are practically independent of one another and are likely to have been built at different times and owned and occupied by different households. In such cases though the whole structure with all the adjoining units apparently appears to be one building, each portion will be treated as a separate structure.

4.12.8 **Item 7: year of purchase/construction of the new house/flat:** For each of the newly constructed/purchased house/flat, the year of purchase/construction of the new house/flat i.e. the year in which the newly purchased house/flat is ready for possession for the first time is to be recorded in this item. Four cells are provided for making entry of the year in the format YYYY.

4.12.9 **Items 8 and 9: number of rooms of the newly purchased/constructed house/flat (in whole numbers):** For the survey, a constructed area with walls or partitions on all sides with at least one door way and a roof overhead is considered as a room. A room with a floor area (carpet area) of at least 4 square meters and a height of at least 2 meters from the floor to the highest point in the ceiling which is used for living purpose is considered as a living room. A room which does not satisfy the specification of 4 square meters floor area and 2 meters height from the floor to the highest point in the ceiling or a room which though satisfies the specification but not used for living purpose is considered as other room. A room which is used for both commercial purpose and residential purpose will be considered as 'other room'. If two or more households use a single room for living purpose, it will be considered as 'other room'. Number of 'living rooms' in the newly purchased/constructed house/flat of the household will be recorded against item 8 and number of 'other rooms' in the newly purchased/constructed house/flat will be recorded against item 9 in whole number.

4.12.10 **Items 10 to 14: floor area of the newly purchased/constructed house/flat (in square feet and in whole numbers):** Information regarding the floor area of living rooms, other rooms, covered veranda, uncovered veranda and total floor area of the dwelling unit of the household will be recorded in items 10 to 13. Information for each of these items is to be recorded in square feet and in whole numbers. The information on inside floor area (carpet area), i.e., the inside area of the floor of all 'living rooms' taken together (excluding

the area covered by the walls) is to be recorded against item 10 and that of 'other rooms' will be recorded against item 11. If a room is used both for business and residential purposes and the residential use is not very nominal, the total area of the room will be included for recording entry in item 10. On the other hand, if only a portion of a room is used for residential purposes, only the area of that portion will be included for making the entry in item 10. The same procedure will be adopted in case of room being shared with another household. The floor area of the 'covered veranda' and that of 'uncovered veranda' is to be recorded against items 12 and 13, respectively. A veranda is considered as 'covered veranda' if it is protected from all sides and it is considered as 'uncovered veranda' if it is not protected from at least one side. Definition of 'covered veranda' and 'uncovered veranda' is described in Chapter One. Item 14 will be the total of items 10 to 13.

4.12.11 Item 15: wall type of the newly purchased/constructed house/flat: Information on the basic building materials with which the walls of the dwelling unit of the newly purchased/constructed house/flat of the household are constructed will be recorded in terms of codes given as follows:

wall type:

grass / straw / leaves / reeds / bamboo, etc.	1
mud (with / without bamboo) / unburnt brick	2
canvas / cloth	3
other katcha	4
timber	5
burnt brick / stone / limestone	6
iron or other metal sheet	7
cement/ RBC/ RCC	8
other pucca	9

4.12.11.1 When the basic building materials used are different for different walls, the materials used for *major portion* of wall area of the dwelling unit will be the wall type. For determining the wall type, only the walls of the dwelling will be considered. If more than one code is applicable for any item, the code which appears first in the code list will be recorded.

4.12.12 Item 16: roof type of the newly purchased/constructed house/flat: Information on the basic building materials with which the roof of the dwelling unit of the newly purchased/constructed house/flat of the household are constructed will be recorded in terms of codes given as follows:

roof type:

grass / straw / leaves / reeds / bamboo, etc.	1
mud / unburnt brick	2
canvas / cloth	3
other katcha	4
tiles / slate	5
burnt brick / stone / limestone	6
iron / zinc / other metal sheet /asbestos sheet	7
cement / RBC / RCC	8
other pucca	9

4.12.12.1 Roof type will also be determined on the basis of the material used for major portion of roof area of the dwelling, if the different portions of the roof / floor are made of different building materials. For determining the material of the roof, the material of which the outer roof exposed to the weather (and not the ceiling) is made, i.e., tiles, thatch, corrugated iron, zinc or asbestos sheet, etc., will be considered. However, if the roof is mainly made of bricks, tiles, stone, etc., with the mud, cement or lime plaster exposed to the sky, the material of roof will not be mud, cement, lime, etc. but it will be brick, tile, stone, etc. which constituted the fabric of the roof. If more than one code is applicable for any item, the code which appears first in the code list will be recorded.

4.12.13 **Item 17:source of finance for purchase/construction of the newly purchased/constructed house/flat:** The source from which the maximum amount was financed for the purchase/construction of new house/flat is to be recorded here in terms of the following codes:

bank	1
private finance (NBFC etc.)	2
own finance	3
any other source	4

4.12.13.1 The description of the codes is given below:

- (i) *Bank* includes commercial banks including foreign commercial banks operating in India, nationalised banks, regional rural bank, cooperative society/bank like district or central cooperative banks or other types of cooperative societies.
- (ii) *Private finance* includes loans taken from Life Insurance Corporation, other insurance fund, refundable advances/loans taken from PPF accounts in private sector offices, private financial corporation/institutions or from any other private institutional agencies. A Non-Banking Financial Company (NBFC) is a company registered under the Companies Act, 1956 engaged in the business of loans and advances, acquisition of shares/stocks/bonds/debentures/securities

issued by Government or local authority or other marketable securities of a like nature, leasing, hire-purchase, insurance business, chit business but does not include any institution whose principal business is that of agriculture activity, industrial activity, purchase or sale of any goods (other than securities) or providing any services and sale/purchase/construction of immovable property.

At present there are twelve categories of NBFCs registered with the RBI, these are; Asset Finance Companies (NBFC-AFC), Investment Companies (NBFC-LC), Loan Companies (NBFC-LC), Infrastructure Finance Company (IFC), Systemically Important Core Investment Company (CIC-ND-SI), Infrastructure Debt Fund: Non-Banking Financial Company (IDF-NBFC), Micro Finance Institution (NBFC-MFI), Factors (NBFC-Factors), NBFC-Account Aggregator (NBFC-AA), NBFC- Peer to Peer Lending Platform (NBFCP2P), Mortgage Guarantee Companies (MGC) and NBFC- Non-Operative Financial Holding Company (NOFHC).

- (iii) Own finance includes savings of the different members of the household, non-refundable amount (final withdrawal or part withdrawal drawn by some of the household members) from provident fund account by the household members, amount received from sale of assets, etc.
- (iv) Any other source includes money (including subsidy received either in cash or kind) received from Central or state Government, loans taken from Life Insurance Corporation, Postal Life Insurance, other insurance fund, refundable advances/loans taken from PPF accounts of public sector offices, public financial corporation/institutions or from any other public institutional agencies. Loans/advances may also be taken from non institutional agencies viz. self-helpgroups, money lenders, friends and relatives etc.

4.13 Block 7: migration particulars of household members [person level information]

4.13.1 Block 7 will be used to record person level information of each of the household members on whether the place of enumeration is different from the last usual place of residence, if it differs then some particulars of the last usual place of residence viz. location, state/u.t./country, tenorial status, area type will be collected along with the reason for leaving the last usual place of residence, change in income due to migration if the household member was an earning member of the household at the time of migration. In addition to these, Block 7 will be used to collect information on what type of document(s) has/have been transferred in present place of enumeration by the household and whether any problem is faced by the household member in the present place of residence and whether he/she wants to move out of the present place of enumeration.

Usual place of residence (upr) is the village/town where a person stayed continuously for a period of 6 months or more. In the present place of enumeration, if a person intends to stay for 6 months or more it will also be considered as his/her present usual place of residence (upr).

Last usual place of residence (lpr) is referred to be the village/town/country where the household member stayed continuously for 6 months or more before coming to the present village/ town at the place of enumeration.

4.13.2 **Item 1: serial no. [as in col. 1, block 3]:** The serial number of the household members will be copied in this block in the same order as they appear in block 3. In each column detail of one person will be recorded. Three columns have been provided to record for three persons, but if this is found to be insufficient for any household, extra sheets may be used. Information about extra sheet, if any, must be recorded in item 3 of block 2.

4.13.3 **Item 2: age (years) [as in col. 5, block 4]:** The age of the person as recorded in column 5 of block 3 is to be copied here.

4.13.4 **Item 3: whether place of enumeration differs from last usual place of residence (upr):** This item is intended to capture the information on migration of the household members. This will be decided based on the concept of change in the usual place of residence (upr). The usual place of residence here is defined as a place (village or town) where the person has stayed continuously for a period of six months or more. The place of enumeration refers to the place (village or town) where the person is being enumerated or surveyed, i.e., the present place of residence of the person. This item will record whether the person now enumerated had a different upr previously (called the last upr) in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. Code 1 will be recorded for persons whose place of enumeration is different from the last upr. Code 2 will be recorded for those persons who have been staying in the same village or town since their birth. Visits of daughters to their parent's place for child birth or for treatments etc. *will not be* considered even if it is for more than six months. The following two cases may be specifically noted:

- (i) For persons who have only moved from one locality to another within the same town/village, the place of enumeration and place of last upr will be the same.
- (ii) Stay in a different town or village for less than six months will be ignored. For example, if a person staying in place A moves to place B where he stays for 8 months and then moves to place C and stays there for 4 months before finally settling down at place D, and if he is enumerated at place D, his last upr will be B and not C.

Information on items 4 to 16 will be collected only for those members of the household whose place of enumeration differs from last usual

place of residence (i.e. for code 1 in item 3)

4.13.5 **Item 4: location of last usual place of residence:** Location refers to the type of last usual place of residence of the person. The relevant code, as per the structure given below, is to be assigned to each of the members of the household whose place of enumeration differs from last usual place of residence (i.e. for code 1 in item 3).

rural area of same district	....1
urban area of same district	....2
rural area of same state but another district	....3
urban area of same state but another district	....4
rural area of another state	....5
urban area of another state	....6
another country	....7

4.13.6 **Item 5: state/u.t./country of last usual place of residence:** The state/u.t./country to which the last upr belongs to will be recorded in this item. The names of the states/union territories and the corresponding codes to be used here are given below:

State/UT name	code	State/UT name	code	State/UT name	code	State/UT name	code	State/UT name	code
Andhra Pradesh	01	Haryana	09	Manipur	17	Tamil Nadu	25	Dadra & Nagar Haveli	33
Arunachal Pradesh	02	Himachal Pradesh	10	Meghalaya	18	Telangana	26	Daman & Diu	34
Assam	03	Jammu & Kashmir	11	Mizoram	19	Tripura	27	Lakshadweep	35
Bihar	04	Jharkhand	12	Nagaland	20	Uttarakhand	28	Puducherry	36
Chhattisgarh	05	Karnataka	13	Odisha	21	Uttar Pradesh	29	Ladakh	37
Delhi	06	Kerala	14	Punjab	22	West Bengal	30		
Goa	07	Madhya Pradesh	15	Rajasthan	23	A & N Islands	31		
Gujarat	08	Maharashtra	16	Sikkim	24	Chandigarh	32		

The names of the countries and the corresponding codes, to be used here are as below:

Country name	code	Country name	code
Afghanistan	...41	Other Asian Countries	...49
Bangladesh	...42	USA	...50
Bhutan	...43	Canada	...51
Maldives	...44	Other Countries of North and South America	...52
Nepal	...45	United Kingdom (UK)	...53
Pakistan	...46	Other Countries of Europe	...54
Sri Lanka	...47	Countries of Africa	...55

Country name	code	Country name	code
Gulf Countries (Saudi Arabia, Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, UAE and other countries of the region)	...48	Rest of the World	...99

4.13.7 **Item 6:main reason for leaving last upr:** For each of the members of the household whose place of enumeration differs from last usual place of residence (i.e. for code 1 in item 3), the reason for leaving last upr will be ascertained and recorded in terms of codes in this item. Only the reason for leaving the last upr will be considered. Codes for making entries in this item are:

in search of employment	01
in search of better employment	02
business	03
to take up employment / better employment	04
transfer of service/ contract	05
proximity to place of work	06
studies	07
marriage	08
social/political problems (riots, terrorism, political refugee, bad law and order, etc.)	10
displacement by development project	11
scarcity of water	12
acquisition of own house/ flat	13
housing problems/ insufficient land holding	14
health care	15
post retirement	16
natural disaster (drought, flood, tsunami, etc.)	17
migration of parent/earning member of the family	18
others	19

4.13.7.1 The reason for leaving the last upr has to be arrived at after suitable probes for each member of the household whose last upr was different from the place of enumeration. It may be noted that different members may report different reasons for leaving last upr. Brief descriptions of the above mentioned reasons are as follows:

(i) *In search of employment:* Persons, who were not in employment at the time of leaving the last upr, when migrated to another village/ town in search of employment are considered as migrated in search of employment.

(ii) *In search of better employment:* These include those persons who were employed at the time of leaving last upr, but have come to the place of enumeration in search of better employment, in terms of emoluments, job satisfaction, etc..

(iii) *Business*: Those who migrate to start a new business or due to shifting of the existing business will be considered as migrated for business.

(iv) *To take up employment / better employment*: The first two cases are different from this one because it relates to persons who come to the place of enumeration to take up employment. These persons were not in search of employment but were offered jobs or were offered better jobs than the one they were having at the time of leaving last upr.

(v) *Transfer of service/ contract*: Transfer of service/ contract will include persons who as part of the employment contract or service liability migrate from one place of posting to another.

(vi) *Proximity to place of work*: This will include persons who had moved in order to be nearer to their places of work. These are the people who move to another village/ town with the explicit purpose of avoiding or reducing commuting to place of work or other similar reasons and should be distinguished from the persons who migrate to take up employment/ better employment.

(vii) *Studies*: Students and others who leave their upr for studies will be classified under this category. If a person changes upr to pursue his studies and at the same time looks for employment, which is the case in many occasions, the factor which is basic for his change of residence should be considered.

(viii) *Marriage*: A substantial number of women in India change their upr after marriage. Person, whose change in upr occurs exclusively due to marriage will be covered here.

(ix) *Social/ political problems (riots, terrorism, political refugee, bad law and order, etc.)*: Migration arising out of social or political problems such as riots, terrorism, political refugee, bad law and order, etc. will be included under this category.

(x) *Displacement by development project*: Sometime undertaking development projects, such as construction of dams, power plants, or starting a new factory, etc., may result in eviction of persons and those effected by such displacements may migrate to other village/ town. Such types of migration will be included in this category.

(xi) *Scarcity of water*: Migration arising out of less availability (scarcity) of water will be included under this category.

(xii) *Acquisition of own house/ flat*: Persons who move to a place to stay in a house/ flat acquired by them will be categorized in this category. Here again the reason for movement should be directly attributable to the acquisition. Persons who on retirement move to their own house, etc. will not be included.

(xiii) *Housing problems/insufficient land holding*: Certain persons move from metropolitan cities or large towns to nearby smaller towns or other areas due to the problems of getting suitable accommodation, poor amenities, or high rent, etc. In rural areas, it may be mainly due to poor amenities.

(xiv) *Health care*: Persons sometimes move from one place to another due to the availability of better medical facilities for treatment or conditions, unsuitable weather in the last upr. They will be covered under this reason.

(xv) *Post retirement*: Sometimes after retirement, persons may leave upr either to stay in their native place or in some other place chosen by him/ her. If the reason for migration is due to retirement from employment they will be categorized here.

(xvi) *Natural disaster(earthquake, drought, flood, tsunami, etc.)*: Persons who have migrate due to natural disaster caused by earthquake, drought, flood, cyclone, tsunami, etc. will be covered under this category.

(xvii) *Migration of parent/ earning member of the family*: In many cases, the members are passive movers in the sense that they change upr because the parent or earning member changed upr. Such migrants will be categorized here.

(xviii) *Others*: Reasons for migration which cannot be classified into any of the above categories will be covered here.

4.13.8 Item 7:tenurial status of dwelling unit in the last upr: A dwelling unit is the accommodation used by the household for its residential purpose. The tenurial status of the dwelling unit in the last upr, indicating the type of possession of the household on the dwelling unit in the last usual place of residence, will be recorded in this item in terms of the following codes:

<i>owned:</i>	
freehold	1
leasehold.....	2
<i>hired:</i>	
employer quarter	3
hired dwelling unit with written contract.....	4
hired dwelling unit without written contract.....	5
others	9

no dwelling 6

4.13.8.1 A dwelling unit is considered to be ‘owned’ by the sample household if permanent heritable possession with or without the right to transfer the title is vested in a member or members of the household. Dwelling unit with owner-like possession under long term lease or assignment is also considered as owned. If the sample household has the right of permanent heritable possession of the dwelling unit with or without the right to transfer the title, the dwelling unit will be considered as ‘freehold’ and code 1 will be recorded.

4.13.8.2 In cases where the household does not possess the title of ownership of the dwelling unit but has the right for long term possession of the dwelling unit (e.g., dwelling units possessed under perpetual lease, hereditary tenure and long term lease for 30 years or more), the tenorial status of the dwelling unit will be considered as ‘leasehold’ and code 2 will be recorded.

4.13.8.3 If the dwelling unit, in which the sample household lives, is provided to a member of the sample household by his/her employer, the dwelling unit will be considered as ‘employer quarter’ and code 3 will be assigned.

4.13.8.4 If the dwelling unit is taken on rent, by the sample household, which is payable at monthly, quarterly or any other periodic intervals or on lease, for a period of less than 30 years, it will be treated as a hired dwelling unit. It may be noted that a hired dwelling unit may be free of rent also. If the sample household had written contract with its owner for the hired dwelling unit, the tenorial status of the dwelling unit will be considered as ‘hired dwelling unit with written contract’ and code 4 will be entered in item 7.

4.13.8.5 On the other hand, if the sample household had no written contract with its owner for the hired dwelling unit, the tenorial status of the dwelling unit will be considered as ‘hired dwelling unit without written contract’ and code 5 will be entered in item 7.

4.13.8.6 Households living more or less regularly under staircase, in tents, in pipes, under bridges, in purely temporary flimsy improvisations built by the roadside (which are liable to be removed at any moment) are considered to have no dwelling and for such households code 6 will be recorded against this item.

4.13.8.7 Code 9 will be entered in all other types of possession of the dwelling unit (e.g., encroached one).

4.13.9 **Item 8: area type of the dwelling unit in the last upr (for codes 1 to 5 or 9 in item 7):** Information in this item will be collected for the households having dwelling units in the last upr (i.e., entry in item 7 as any of 1 to 5 or 9). Households having dwelling units are considered as living in houses. For households living in houses in the last usual place

of residence, information on the type of area in which the dwelling unit was located will be recorded against this item in terms of following codes:

notified slum.....	1
non-notified slum.....	2
squatter settlement.....	3
other areas.....	9

4.13.9.1 The definitions of notified slum, non-notified slum and squatter settlement are given in Chapter One. *Slums and squatter settlements will be considered for urban areas only and for households in rural areas, only code 9 will be recorded against item 8.*

4.13.9.2 A slum may be a notified slum or a non-notified slum. Notified slums are the areas notified as slums by the municipalities, corporations, local bodies or development authorities. A non-notified slum is a compact settlement with a collection of poorly built tenements, mostly of temporary nature, crowded together, usually with inadequate sanitary and drinking water facilities in unhygienic conditions with at least 20 or more households and is not notified as slums by concerned municipalities, corporations, local bodies or development authorities. Slum like settlements with less than 20 households is considered as squatter settlements. The appropriate code for area type in which the dwelling unit was located will be determined as follows:

- In case the dwelling unit was situated in a notified slum, code 1 will be recorded.
- In case the dwelling unit was situated in a non-notified slum, code 2 will be recorded.
- In case the dwelling unit is situated in a squatter settlement, code 3 will be recorded.
- For all other areas, code 9 will be recorded against this item.

4.13.10 **Item 9:whether the household member was an earning member of the household before migration:** Each of the household member whose place of enumeration differs from last usual place of residence (i.e. for code 1 in item 3), will be asked if he/she used to get some remuneration against activities performed for some pay or profit before leaving his/her last usual place of residence (i.e. village/town/country where the household member stayed continuously for 6 months or more other than the village/ town at the present place of enumeration.) in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. Code 1 is to be reported if the sample household member was an earning member of the household before migration, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.13.11 **Item 10:change in income due to migration (for code 1 in item 9):** From each of the migrant household member, who was an earner of the household before migration, it will be ascertained whether there is any change in income of that sample household member due to migration and information will be recorded in terms of the following codes:

increased from last usual place of residence	1
decreased from last usual place of residence	2
same as in the last usual place of residence	3

4.13.11.1 Code 1 is to be reported if there is an increase in the income of the migrant household member due to change in upr. Similarly, code 2 is to be reported if there is a decrease in the income of the migrant household member due to change in upr. Code 3 is to be reported if the household member reports that his/her income remained the same as it was in the last usual place of residence. For eliciting this information, the investigator will have to depend mainly on the judgement of the informant.

4.13.12 Item 11: documents transferred in the present place of residence from last upr:

For the purpose of this item, the information as to whether the documents of the household members has been transferred in the present place of enumeration from last usual place of residence, as on the date of survey, will be recorded against this item in terms of codes. The codes are:

possesses:

ration card	1
voter ID card	2
passport	3
aadhar card.....	4
any combination of codes 1 to 4	5
others	9
none	6

4.13.12.1 It may be noted that if more than one of the documents given in codes 1 to 4 has been transferred from the last upr, code 5 will be recorded. Code 9 will be recorded if the document transferred is other than those mentioned in the codes 1 to 4. These are like driving license, electricity bill, telephone bill, gas connection, bank/post office pass book, etc. Code 6 will be recorded when none of the documents of the household members has been transferred to the present place of enumeration. If more than one code is applicable, the code appearing first in the code list will be entered. For eliciting this information, the investigator will have to depend mainly on the judgement of the informant.

4.13.13 Item 12:whether facing any problem in present place of residence due to migration: Information on whether the migrant household member faced any problem at

his/her present place of residence (i.e. where he/she stayed or intends to stay for 6 months or more) due to the change in the usual place of residence will be collected in this item in terms of codes *yes - 1, no - 2*. Code 1 is to be reported if the migrant household member faced any problem at his/her present place of residence due to migration and otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.13.14 Item 13: *type of problem faced in the present place of residence (for code 1 in item 12)*: For the migrant household member who reports to have faced any problem at his/her present place of residence due to migration (i.e. code 1 in item 12), information on the nature of problem being faced by him/her at his/her present place of residence is to be recorded in terms of the following codes:

social	1
economical	2
political	3
cultural	4
others	5

4.13.14.1 Social/religious factors will include the cases, like, social unrest/insecurity of person and property/annoyance due to religious factors at the present place of residence. The code 'others' will include cases where there is problem of educational facilities, medical facilities, possibility of eviction from the present accommodation and any other reason not associated with any of the codes 1 to 4. If more than one code is applicable, the code appearing first in the code list is to be recorded.

4.13.15 Item 14: *whether willing to move out from the present place of residence*: For each of the migrant household member information on whether he/she wants to leave the present place of residence is to be collected in this item in terms of codes: *yes - 1, no - 2*. Code 1 is to be reported if the household member reports that he/she is willing to move out from the present place of residence, otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.13.16 Item 15: *main reason for willing to move out*: For the migrant household member who reports to be willing to move out from the present place of residence (i.e. code 1 in item 14), the main (major) reason for his/her desire to move out from the present place of residence may be recorded in terms of the following codes:

in search of employment	01
in search of better employment	02
business	03
to take up employment / better employment	04

transfer of service/ contract	05
proximity to place of work	06
studies	07
marriage	08
social/political problems (riots, terrorism, political refugee, bad law and order, etc.)	10
displacement by development project	11
scarcity of water	12
acquisition of own house/ flat	13
housing problems/ insufficient land holding	14
health care	15
post retirement	16
natural disaster (drought, flood, tsunami, etc.)	17
migration of parent/earning member of the family	18
others	19

4.13.16.1 The description of the codes are as follows:

(i) *In search of employment*: Persons, who is not in employment at the present place of residence, and willing to move out of the present place of residence in search of employment will be included in this category.

(ii) *In search of better employment*: This include those persons who are currently employed in present place of residence, but willing to move out of the present place of residence in search of better employment, in terms of emoluments, job satisfaction, etc.

(iii) *Business*: Those who are willing to start a new business or willing to shift the existing business from present place of residence will be considered as willing to move out for business.

(iv) *To take up employment / better employment*: This include those persons who want to move out of the present place of residence to take up new employment or better employment than the one they are already having at the present place of residence.

(v) *Transfer of service/ contract*: Transfer of service/ contract will include persons who as part of the employment contract or service liability who are willing to move out from the present place of residence.

(vi) *Proximity to place of work*: This will include persons who are willing to move out in order to be nearer to his/her places of work. These are the people who are willing to move to another village/ town with the explicit purpose of avoiding or reducing commuting to place of work or other similar reasons and should be distinguished from the persons who are willing to move out for taking up employment/ better employment.

(vii) *Studies*: Students and others who are willing to move out from the present place of residence for studies will be classified under this category. If a person is willing to change his/her upr to pursue his/her studies and at the same time looks for employment, which is the case in many occasions, the factor which is basic for his/her willing to change the present place of residence should be considered.

(viii) *Marriage*: This includes person, who are willing to change his/her present place of residence exclusively due to marriage.

(ix) *Social/ political problems (riots, terrorism, political refugee, bad law and order, etc.)*: Willingness to move out from the present place of residence arising out of social or political problems such as riots, terrorism, political refugee, bad law and order, etc. will be included under this category.

(x) *Displacement by development project*: Sometime undertaking development projects, such as construction of dams, power plants, or starting a new factory, etc., may result in eviction of persons and those effected by such displacements may be the reason for willing to move out to other village/town. Such types of willingness to move out will be included in this category.

(xi) *Scarcity of water*: Willingness to move out from the present place of residence arising out of less availability (scarcity) of water will be included under this category.

(xii) *Acquisition of own house/ flat*: Persons who are willing to move out from the present place of residence to acquire own house/ flat will be categorized in this category. Here the reason for movement should be directly attributable to the acquisition. Persons who on retirement are willing to move out from present place of residence into their own house/flat, etc. will not be included.

(xiii) *Housing problems/insufficient land holding*: Persons willing to move out from the present place of residence due problems like insufficient land holding, high rent, poor amenities, insufficient accommodation, etc will be included in this category.

(xiv) *Health care*: Persons willing to move out from the present place of residence to avail better medical facilities for treatment or better health care facilities will be included in this category.

(xv) *Post retirement*: After retirement, persons may leave the present place of residence either to stay in their native place or in some other place chosen by him/ her. If for a household member the main reason for willingness to move out from the present place of residence is retirement from employment, he/she will be included in this category.

(xvi) *Natural disaster(earthquake, drought, flood, tsunami, etc.):* Persons who are willing to move out from the present place of residence due to natural disaster caused by earthquake, drought, flood, cyclone, tsunami, etc. will be covered under this category.

(xvii) *Migration of parent/ earning member of the family:* It includes the household member who is willing to move out from the present place of residence due to migration of his/her parent or due to migration of earning member of the household.

(xviii) *Others:* Reasons for willingness to move out from the present place of residence which cannot be classified into any of the above categories will be covered here.

4.13.17 Item 16: where are you willing to move out from the present place of residence:

For the migrant household member who reports to be willing to move out from the present place of residence (i.e. code 1 in item 14), the information as to where the household member want to move out from the present place of enumeration, as on the date of survey, will be recorded against this item in terms of the following codes:

last usual place of residence	1
any place other than the last usual place of residence	2

4.14 Block 8: Food Insecurity experience of the household

4.14.1 This block will be used to record the number of days when any of the household member had to skip meals (at least one meal or all meals) due to lack of money or other resources during last 30 days. Other resources refer to financial related reasons and exclude reasons due to health or other cultural habits (such as fasting for religious credos).Items 1 to 4 will be canvassed for all the selected households.

4.14.2 **Item 1: whether any member of the household had to skip at least one meal in at least one day in last 30 days due to lack of money or other resources:** Information on whether any member of the household had to skip at least one meal in at least one day in last 30 days due to lack of money or other resources will be collected in this question in terms of the codes: *yes -1, no -2*. If the sampled household reports that any member of that household had to skip at least one meal in at least one day in last 30 days due to lack of money or other resources, code 1 is to be reported; otherwise code 2 is to be reported. For filling up this question, the investigator has to depend mainly on the judgement of the informant.

4.14.2.1 A ‘meal’ is composed of one or more readily eatable (generally cooked) items of food, the usually major constituent of which is cereals. The meals consumed by a person

twice or thrice a day provide him/her the required energy (calorie) and other nutrients for living and for pursuing his/her normal avocations. A 'meal', as opposed to 'snacks', 'nashta' or 'high tea'; contains larger quantum and variety of food. In rare cases, a full meal may contain larger quantity of non-cereal food. Even then, if the quantum of food in a plate is heavy as a meal, the contents of the food plate will also be considered as a 'meal'. Here other resources refer to financial related reasons and exclude reasons due to health or other cultural habits (such as fasting for religious credos).

4.14.3 Item 2: number of such days (in whole number) (for code 1 in item 1): If the household reports that at least one member of the household had to skip at least one meal in at least one day in last 30 days due to lack of money or other resources (i.e. for code 1 in item 1), the number of such days will be recorded in this item in whole number.

4.14.4 Item 3: whether any member of the household had to skip all meals in at least one day in last 30 days due to lack of money or other resources: Information on whether any member of the household had to skip all meals in at least one day in last 30 days due to lack of money or other resources will be collected in terms of the codes: *yes -1, no -2*. For filling up this item, the investigator has to mainly depend on the judgement of the informant. If any member of the household had to skip all meals in at least one day in last 30 days due to lack of money or other resources, code 1 is to be reported otherwise code 2 is to be reported.

4.14.5 Item 4: number of such days (in whole number) (for code 1 in item 3): If the household reports that at least one member of the household had to skip all meals in at least one day in last 30 days due to lack of money or other resources (i.e. for code 1 in item 3), the number of such days will be recorded in this item in whole number.

4.15 Block 9: Remarks by investigator(s) (FI/JSO)

4.15.1 Any remark which is felt necessary by the investigator(s) for explaining any item-specific unusual feature of the household or of any member thereof will be noted here. Such remarks will help in understanding the entries made in different blocks of the schedule, especially when any entry is numerically very high or very low or entry is unusual.

4.16 Block 10: comments by Field Officer (FO)/ Senior Statistical Officer (SSO)

4.16.1 The supervisory officers should note their views on any aspect pertaining to the characteristics under enquiry in this schedule relating to the household or any member thereof.

Frequently asked questions

Schedule 5.1: Multiple indicator Survey

srl. no.	Block	Item	col.	Query	SDRD reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
1.	3	-	7	What code is to be given for a person who has completed B.Sc. in Nursing.	Code 12 is to be reported.
2.	3	-	7	If a student is reading in 4 th year of a 5 year integrated Course after 12 th standard, what will be his highest level of education- Higher secondary or Graduation?	Graduation, if the university considers 3 years for Graduation and 2 years for Post Graduation out of total duration of 5 years.
3.	3	-	7	If a student completed higher secondary and then completed diploma course equal to higher secondary level, which code is to be reported?	If more than one code is applicable, then the course completed last is to be reported and accordingly code 10 is to be recorded here.
4.	4	3	-	A Household residing in A&N Islands, possesses SC certificate issued by some other State Govt. A&N Islands does not have any caste declared as SC. In such a situation whether to report the household under SC or under 'others' category.	If the household reports that it belongs to SC, due to possession of SC certificate issued by some state, code 2 is to be reported.
5.	4	3	-	A person has Nomadic Tribe category as per the state list whereas code for such category is not available in the schedule. In which category should such household be considered?	Code 1 is to be reported here.
6.	4	4	-	If a household is residing in a houseboat, what will be land possessed by them?	Entry '99' is to be recorded in such case.

srl. no.	Block	Item	col.	Query	SDRD reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
7.	4	4	-	If a household is residing in a village and is utilizing the land of his relative residing in town. How is such land to be treated?	This land will be treated as leased-in land for the household residing in the village and will be considered for calculating land possessed.
8.	4	4	-	For a sample household residing in a rental dwelling, the head of that household owns land at its native place which is not leased out. Is the land in question to be recorded in this item?	Yes, any land owned by the household within the jurisdiction of the country which is not leased out is to be considered for making entry in this item.
9.	4	4	-	What will the area of land possessed by the household be in respect of a flat?	The total area of land is to be divided in proportion to the areas of the flats in that land to get the land possessed by the household.
10.	4	5	-	Educational expenses incurred by the household on ex-member of the household (residing in hostel) are to be reported or not.	Educational expenses for the ex-member will not be considered for calculation of UMPCE of that household.
11.	4	7	-	Whether imputed value of Mid-day meal taken is to be considered here.	Imputed value of Mid-day meal taken will be considered here.
12.	4	7	-	A person is employed as caretaker in a factory/home and provided rent free accommodation by the employer. Whether value of imputed rent is to be considered for calculating UMPCE of the caretaker.	Value of imputed rent is not to be considered for calculation of UMPCE.
13.	4	7	-	Is gift/free collection of goods of irregular nature a part of household's usual consumer expenditure?	The free collection/ gifts is to be reflected in UMPCE only if they are fairly regular in nature.

srl. no.	Block	Item	col.	Query	SDRD reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
14.	4	9	-	If a household purchases a car on hire purchase basis, whether the entire cost of car is to be considered or only the amount of down payment made will be considered for calculating the UMPCE for making entry under this item.	Actual amount paid during the year is to be reported here.
15.	4	9	-	Whether repair/servicing of vehicle will be considered in this item.	Cost of repair/servicing of vehicle will be considered for reporting in this item.
16.	4	9	-	If a car is purchased by taking loan from bank and instalments are being paid to the bank as repayment of loan, whether the full purchase amount of the car is to be considered or only the amount of instalments paid during the last 365 days is to be reported.	The total purchase amount of the car will be considered for making entry in this item.
17.	4	9	-	Will expenses on major repair of any durable goods be included in the calculation of UMPCE?	Yes, all expenses on major repair of any durable goods will be included in the calculation of UMPCE.
18.	4	9	-	Whether amount spent for purchase of flats/houses will be considered for calculating UMPCE.	Amount spent for purchase of flats/houses will not be considered for calculating UMPCE.
19.	4	11	-	If a person lives in a house which is in the name of his father who is not alive, what code is to be recorded here for the household of that person?	Code 1 will be recorded in this case.
20.	4	11	-	House has been leased in by the	Code 4 or 5 is to be reported

srl. no.	Block	Item	col.	Query	SDRD reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
				sample household for 5 years by paying a lump sum amount of Rs.10 lakhs (as a security deposit), refundable in full after the said period and the household is not required to pay any monthly rent. In this case, what code can be given.	here depending on the situation.
21.	4	13	-	If the walls of a structure are made up of bricks by just stacking one brick on the other. Moreover they are not joined by cement and are of purely temporary nature. What will be the code given in such case?	Code 2 or 6 may be reported based on whether the bricks are burnt or not.
22.	4	14	-	The roof of the building was not made by Cement/RCC but due to leakage problem the roof of building has been further modified or constructed by cement. What materials/roof type is to be considered?	Roof type will be the basic building material used for major part of the roof area of the dwelling.
23.	4	15	-	A household has a kitchen with all the cooking facilities but it does not use the kitchen for cooking purpose. What code will be recorded here?	Here, it will be considered that the household has a separate kitchen and code 1 or 2 will be recorded depending upon whether the kitchen has a water tap inside it or not.
24.	4	15	-	A kitchen has a tap without water since last 3 years. In such case what code is to be reported?	In such case, code 2 may be reported.
25.	4	15	-	Now a days in modern flats, there are open kitchens within the drawing rooms. Whether these are to be considered as	In this situation it will be considered that the household has separate kitchen and the codes 1 or 2 is to be recorded.

srl. no.	Block	Item	col.	Query	SDRD reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
				separate kitchen?	
26.	4	15	-	For some households in rural areas, cooking is usually done in a place with thatched roofs and walls measuring 3-4 feet with the upper parts open. Whether it will be considered as a separate kitchen of the household?	These cooking places do not meet the definition of room/other room and therefore, such households will not be considered to have separate kitchens.
27.	4	20	-	A household collects drinking water from RO treated kiosk managed by Govt., what code should be reported in such case against item 20?	Code 01 is to be reported if the household collects RO treated drinking water from the kiosk.
28.	4	20	-	What will be the source code of drinking water for a single member household where drinking water is collected daily through tap supplied from bore well in the office premises where he works?	Code 04 is to be reported
29.	4	20	-	Most of the wells in Kerala are having a headwall around it, a concrete drainage platform and a bucket with windlass. As it is covered with net on top and it is not protected from bird droppings, can this well be considered as protected for the purpose of this survey?	Code 13(unprotected well) is to be reported as the well is not protected from bird droppings.
30.	4	20	-	In a village Government has made a facility at one place to collect water from the ground and purify the water through R.O. process. The sample household collects water for drinking purpose from this	Code 01 is to be reported.

srl. no.	Block	Item	col.	Query	SDRD reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
				source on a chargeable basis. In this case what code is to be reported?	
31.	4	20	-	If in sample village arrangement is made by the villages for bringing water up to their respective households from a source i.e. spring through pipes, then whether the major source of drinking water will be spring or taps?	The source of the same would 02 (piped water into dwelling).
32.	4	20	-	A household is using Diesel pump to extract water from underground and then the water is supplied to the household through pipes. In this item, what code is to be reported?	Here appropriate code will be '06'. However if any agency make arrangement to supply water in the household through pipe, then it will be considered as piped water.
33.	4	20	-	A household uses two sources namely well and hand pump both located in his premises equally for drinking purpose. What code will be entered?	The principal source of drinking water will relate to that source of drinking water from which most of the drinking water of the household was obtained during the last 365 days. If a household uses two sources for drinking water, the source from which most of the drinking water is obtained is to be enquired first. However, if the household gets equal amount of water from two sources during the last 365 days, the code appearing first in the code-list is to be recorded as the principal source of drinking water.
34.	4	21	-	If there is a scarcity of water in	Code 1 is to be provided as

srl. no.	Block	Item	col.	Query	SDRD reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
				the surrounding area of a sample household consisting of two members but the household reports sufficiency of water, what code is to be reported in this item?	insufficiency of drinking water is to be determined based on the judgement of the informant.
35.	4	22	-	Eight households are accessing drinking water from a common well, located outside their premises through a motored pipe connection. Moreover no other household has access to this well. What code should be given?	If the well is created with public fund code 4 will be applicable and if created with the private fund code 6 will be applicable. If all the households reside in the same building code 2 is to be reported.
36.	4	23	3	If a household has personal water tap outside the gate, attached to the building outside /outer premises wall. What code should be reported?	Code 2 should be reported because the tap is attached to the wall which is within premises.
37.	4	20, 23,24	3	In rural villages of Sikkim, the principal source of water for most of the households is spring from where the water is piped to the household premises. (a) What code should be given against item 20? (b) If code 12 or 13 is given in item 20, how are the items 23 and 24 to be filled up?	(a) If household makes such arrangement on its own code 12 or 13 as the case may be will be recorded. If any agency makes such arrangement for household, code 02 or 03 may be applicable. (b) If code in item 20 is 02 or 03, code in item 23 will be 1 or 2. If code in item 20 is 12 or 13, any of code 3 to 7 is to be reported in item 23 depending on the distance of the spring from the dwelling and item 24 will be left blank with

srl. no.	Block	Item	col.	Query	SDRD reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
					appropriate remarks.
38.	4	24	-	If three or four members of a household fetch water from the source, then whether minimum, maximum or the average time taken is to be reported?	Average time taken is to be reported.
39.	4	25	-	If a public/community latrine in a locality has been encroached by a single household and that household does not allow other households in the locality to use it. Which code will be given for the household which encroached and uses that public/community toilet?	Code 3 i.e. public/community latrine without payment is to be recorded for the household which encroached and uses that public/community toilet.
40.	4	26	-	In a household, the members use different types of latrine. What code will be entered?	Code for the type of latrine used by most of the members will be recorded.
41.	4	29	-	Plastic wastes are collected by the municipality authorities once in three months and other wastes are disposed at household premises. Which code is suitable in this case?	Since there is no agency who make arrangement for collection of garbage on a regular basis, code 4 is to be recorded.
42.	4	29	-	A household is dumping its waste by digging a pit in its premises. What code is to be given?	Code 4 (no arrangement) is to be reported.
43.	4	30	-	If the vehicle of municipality comes door-to-door to pick up the garbage from the households, which code will be recorded in such case.	Place of disposal of garbage is to be enquired and code is to be recorded accordingly.
44.	4	30	-	The household disposed their garbage to the mobile van	If the municipality van is kept in the locality permanently

srl. no.	Block	Item	col.	Query	SDRD reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
				coming from the municipal corporation. What code is to be given?	and garbage is cleared on a regular basis the appropriate code will be 3. If the garbage is collected in a van and finally disposed to other place regularly, the ultimate place of disposal of garbage is to be enquired and appropriate code is to be reported.
45.	6	8,9	-	A household has one living room and kitchen with doorway and no door was fixed to that. Shall we consider that as one other room or one living room and one other room?	One living room and one other room are to be reported in such case.
46.	6	10	-	In a living room, there is a staircase for first floor. Should we deduct the area of staircase to get floor area of the living room?	Since floor area means carpet area, the base area of the staircase is to be deducted to get floor area of the living room.
47.	6	11	-	A bathroom which is of dimension 30 sq. ft. is shared by 4 households. Whether the entire area of the bathroom is to be recorded for each household or the area of bathroom is to be divided by the number of households and the share is to be reported for each household?	The total floor area of bathroom is to be equally apportioned among the 4 households and the proportionate area is to be reported for the sample household.
48.	6	12,13	-	A household has open terrace/balcony in the flat which is included in the floor area of the flat. Whether it is to be considered as veranda or not.	It is to be considered as uncovered verandah and corresponding area is to be considered for recording entry in item 13.

srl. no.	Block	Item	col.	Query	SDRD reply
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)
49.	6	10- 13	-	If there is a gap/space between two rooms within the dwelling unit, how that area will be considered for recording in these items?	The space between two rooms within the dwelling unit may be considered as living room/other room or a part of living room/other room/verandah depending on the size of the space/its layout and use.
50.	6	13	-	In a household uncovered veranda is used for keeping goats. Can it be considered as uncovered veranda for this household?	Yes.

APPENDIX - I

LIST OF NSS REGIONS AND THEIR COMPOSITION

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
1.	Andaman & Nicobar Islands (35)	351	Andaman & Nicobar Islands	1.	Nicobars	(01)
				2.	North & Middle Andaman	(02)
				3.	South Andaman	(03)
2.	Andhra Pradesh (28)	281	Coastal Northern	4.	Srikakulam	(01)
				5.	Vizianagaram	(02)
				6.	Visakhapatnam	(03)
				7.	East Godavari	(04)
				8.	West Godavari	(05)
3.		282	Coastal Southern	9.	Krishna	(06)
				10.	Guntur	(07)
				11.	Prakasam	(08)
				12.	Sri Potti Sriramulu Nellore	(09)
4.		283	Inland Southern	13.	Y.S.R. (Cuddapah)	(10)
				14.	Kurnool	(11)
				15.	Anantapur	(12)
				16.	Chittoor	(13)
5.	Arunachal Pradesh (12)	121	Arunachal Pradesh	17.	Tawang	(01)
				18.	West Kameng	(02)
				19.	East Kameng	(03)
				20.	Papum Pare	(04)
				21.	Upper Subansiri	(05)
				22.	West Siang	(06)
				23.	East Siang	(07)
				24.	Upper Siang	(08)
				25.	Changlang	(09)
				26.	Tirap	(10)
				27.	Lower Subansiri	(11)
				28.	Kurung Kumey	(12)
				29.	Dibang Valley	(13)
				30.	Lower Dibang Valley	(14)
				31.	Lohit	(15)
				32.	Anjaw	(16)
6.	Assam (18)	181	Plains Eastern	33.	Lakhimpur	(08)
				34.	Dhemaji	(09)
				35.	Tinsukia	(10)
				36.	Dibrugarh	(11)
				37.	Sivasagar	(12)
				38.	Jorhat	(13)
				39.	Golaghat	(14)
7.		182	Plains Western	40.	Kokrajhar	(01)
				41.	Dhubri	(02)
				42.	Goalpara	(03)
				43.	Barpeta	(04)
				44.	Bongaigaon	(20)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
				45.	Chirang	(21)
				46.	Kamrup	(22)
				47.	Kamrup Metropolitan	(23)
				48.	Nalbari	(24)
				49.	Baksa	(25)
8.		183	Cachar Plain	50.	Karbi Anglong	(15)
				51.	Dima Hasao	(16)
				52.	Cachar	(17)
				53.	Karimganj	(18)
				54.	Hailakandi	(19)
9.		184	Central Brahmaputra Plains	55.	Morigaon	(05)
				56.	Nagaon	(06)
				57.	Sonitpur	(07)
				58.	Darrang	(26)
				59.	Udalguri	(27)
10.	Bihar (10)	101	Northern	60.	Pashchim Champaran	(01)
				61.	Purba Champaran	(02)
				62.	Sheohar	(03)
				63.	Sitamarhi	(04)
				64.	Madhubani	(05)
				65.	Supaul	(06)
				66.	Araria	(07)
				67.	Kishanganj	(08)
				68.	Purnia	(09)
				69.	Katihar	(10)
				70.	Madhepura	(11)
				71.	Saharsa	(12)
				72.	Darbhanga	(13)
				73.	Muzaffarpur	(14)
				74.	Gopalganj	(15)
				75.	Siwan	(16)
				76.	Saran	(17)
				77.	Vaishali	(18)
				78.	Samastipur	(19)
				79.	Begusarai	(20)
				80.	Khagaria	(21)
11.		102	Central	81.	Bhagalpur	(22)
				82.	Banka	(23)
				83.	Munger	(24)
				84.	Lakhisarai	(25)
				85.	Sheikhpura	(26)
				86.	Nalanda	(27)
				87.	Patna	(28)
				88.	Bhojpur	(29)
				89.	Buxar	(30)
				90.	Kaimur (Bhabua)	(31)
				91.	Rohtas	(32)
				92.	Aurangabad	(33)
				93.	Gaya	(34)
				94.	Nawada	(35)
				95.	Jamui	(36)
				96.	Jehanabad	(37)
				97.	Arwal	(38)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
12.	Chandigarh (04)	041	Chandigarh	98.	Chandigarh	(01)
13.	Chhattisgarh (22)	221	Northern Chhattisgarh	99.	Koriya	(01)
				100.	Surguja	(02)
				101.	Surajpur	(26)
				102.	Balrampur	(27)
14.		222	Mahanadi Basin	103.	Jashpur	(03)
				104.	Raigarh	(04)
				105.	Korba	(05)
				106.	Janjgir-Champa	(06)
				107.	Bilaspur	(07)
				108.	Kabeerdham	(08)
				109.	Rajnandgaon	(09)
				110.	Durg	(10)
				111.	Raipur	(11)
				112.	Mahasamund	(12)
				113.	Dhamtari	(13)
				114.	Balodabazar	(19)
				115.	Gariyaband	(20)
				116.	Bemetara	(23)
				117.	Balod	(24)
				118.	Mungeli	(25)
15.		223	Southern Chhattisgarh	119.	Uttar Bastar Kanker	(14)
				120.	Bastar	(15)
				121.	Narayanpur	(16)
				122.	Dakshin Bastar Dantewada	(17)
				123.	Bijapur	(18)
				124.	Kondagaon	(21)
				125.	Sukama	(22)
16.	Dadra & Nagar Haveli (26)	261	Dadra & Nagar Haveli	126.	Dadra & Nagar Haveli	(01)
17.	Daman & Diu (25)	251	Daman & Diu	127.	Diu	(01)
				128.	Daman	(02)
18.	Delhi (07)	071	Delhi	129.	North West	(01)
				130.	North	(02)
				131.	North East	(03)
				132.	East	(04)
				133.	New Delhi	(05)
				134.	Central	(06)
				135.	West	(07)
				136.	South West	(08)
				137.	South	(09)
19.	Goa (30)	301	Goa	138.	North Goa	(01)
				139.	South Goa	(02)
20.	Gujarat (24)	241	South Eastern	140.	Panch Mahals	(17)
				141.	Dohad	(18)
				142.	Vadodara	(19)
				143.	Narmada	(20)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
				144.	Bharuch	(21)
				145.	The Dangs	(22)
				146.	Navsari	(23)
				147.	Valsad	(24)
				148.	Surat	(25)
				149.	Tapi	(26)
				150.	Chhota Udepur	(29)
				151.	Mahisagar	(32)
21.		242	Plains Northern	152.	Mahesana	(04)
				153.	Sabar Kantha	(05)
				154.	Gandhinagar	(06)
				155.	Ahmadabad	(07)
				156.	Anand	(15)
				157.	Kheda	(16)
				158.	Arvalli	(27)
22.		243	Dry areas	159.	Banas Kantha	(02)
				160.	Patan	(03)
23.		244	Kachchh	161.	Kachchh	(01)
24.		245	Saurashtra	162.	Surendranagar	(08)
				163.	Rajkot	(09)
				164.	Jamnagar	(10)
				165.	Porbandar	(11)
				166.	Junagadh	(12)
				167.	Amreli	(13)
				168.	Bhavnagar	(14)
				169.	Botad	(28)
				170.	Dev Bhumi-Dwarka	(30)
				171.	Gir Somnath	(31)
				172.	Morbi	(33)
25.	Haryana (06)	061	Eastern	173.	Panchkula	(01)
				174.	Ambala	(02)
				175.	Yamunanagar	(03)
				176.	Kurukshetra	(04)
				177.	Kaithal	(05)
				178.	Karnal	(06)
				179.	Panipat	(07)
				180.	Sonipat	(08)
				181.	Rohtak	(14)
				182.	Jhajjar	(15)
				183.	Gurgaon	(18)
				184.	Mewat	(19)
				185.	Faridabad	(20)
				186.	Palwal	(21)
26.		062	Western	187.	Jind	(09)
				188.	Fatehabad	(10)
				189.	Sirsa	(11)
				190.	Hisar	(12)
				191.	Bhiwani	(13)
				192.	Mahendragarh	(16)
				193.	Rewari	(17)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
27.	Himachal Pradesh (02)	021	Central	194.	Kangra	(02)
				195.	Kullu	(04)
				196.	Mandi	(05)
				197.	Hamirpur	(06)
				198.	Una	(07)
28.		022	Trans Himalayan & Southern	199.	Chamba	(01)
				200.	Lahul & Spiti	(03)
				201.	Bilaspur	(08)
				202.	Solan	(09)
				203.	Sirmaur	(10)
				204.	Shimla	(11)
				205.	Kinnaur	(12)
29.	Jammu & Kashmir (01)	011	Mountainous	206.	Kathua	(07)
				207.	Jammu	(21)
				208.	Samba	(22)
30.		012	Outer Hills	209.	Punch	(05)
				210.	Rajouri	(06)
				211.	Doda	(16)
				212.	Ramban	(17)
				213.	Kishtwar	(18)
				214.	Udhampur	(19)
				215.	Reasi	(20)
31.		013	Jhelam Valley	216.	Kupwara	(01)
				217.	Badgam	(02)
				218.	Baramula	(08)
				219.	Bandipore	(09)
				220.	Srinagar	(10)
				221.	Ganderbal	(11)
				222.	Pulwama	(12)
				223.	Shupiyan	(13)
				224.	Anantnag	(14)
				225.	Kulgam	(15)
				32.	Jharkhand (20)	201	Ranchi Plateau	226.	Garhwa	(01)
227.	Lohardaga	(11)				
228.	Purbi Singhbhum	(12)				
229.	Palamu	(13)				
230.	Latehar	(14)				
231.	Ranchi	(19)				
232.	Khunti	(20)				
233.	Gumla	(21)				
234.	Simdega	(22)				
235.	Pashchimi Singhbhum	(23)				
236.	Saraikela-Kharsawan	(24)				
33.		202	Hazaribagh Plateau	237.	Chatra	(02)
				238.	Kodarma	(03)
				239.	Giridih	(04)
				240.	Deoghar	(05)
				241.	Godda	(06)
				242.	Sahibganj	(07)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
				243.	Pakur	(08)
				244.	Dhanbad	(09)
				245.	Bokaro	(10)
				246.	Hazaribagh	(15)
				247.	Ramgarh	(16)
				248.	Dumka	(17)
				249.	Jamtara	(18)
34.	Karnataka (29)	291	Coastal & Ghats	250.	Uttara Kannada	(09)
				251.	Udupi	(15)
				252.	Dakshina Kannada	(21)
35.		292	Inland Eastern	253.	Shimoga	(14)
				254.	Chikmagalur	(16)
				255.	Hassan	(20)
				256.	Kodagu	(22)
36.		293	Inland Southern	257.	Tumkur	(17)
				258.	Bangalore	(18)
				259.	Mandya	(19)
				260.	Mysore	(23)
				261.	Chamarajanagar	(24)
				262.	Kolar	(27)
				263.	Chikkaballapura	(28)
				264.	Bangalore Rural	(29)
				265.	Ramanagara	(30)
37.		294	Inland Northern	266.	Belgaum	(01)
				267.	Bagalkot	(02)
				268.	Bijapur	(03)
				269.	Bidar	(04)
				270.	Raichur	(05)
				271.	Koppal	(06)
				272.	Gadag	(07)
				273.	Dharwad	(08)
				274.	Haveri	(10)
				275.	Bellary	(11)
				276.	Chitradurga	(12)
				277.	Davanagere	(13)
				278.	Gulbarga	(25)
				279.	Yadgir	(26)
38.	Kerala (32)	321	Northern	280.	Kasaragod	(01)
				281.	Kannur	(02)
				282.	Wayanad	(03)
				283.	Kozhikode	(04)
				284.	Malappuram	(05)
				285.	Palakkad	(06)
39.		322	Southern	286.	Thrissur	(07)
				287.	Ernakulam	(08)
				288.	Idukki	(09)
				289.	Kottayam	(10)
				290.	Alappuzha	(11)
				291.	Pathanamthitta	(12)
				292.	Kollam	(13)
				293.	Thiruvananthapuram	(14)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
40.	Ladakh (37)	371	Ladakh	294.	Leh	(01)
				295.	Kargil	(02)
41.	Lakshadweep (31)	311	Lakshadweep	296.	Lakshadweep	(01)
42.	Madhya Pradesh (23)	231	Vindhya	297.	Tikamgarh	(07)
				298.	Chhatarpur	(08)
				299.	Panna	(09)
				300.	Satna	(12)
				301.	Rewa	(13)
				302.	Umaria	(14)
				303.	Shahdol	(43)
				304.	Anuppur	(44)
				305.	Sidhi	(45)
				306.	Singrauli	(46)
43.		232	Central	307.	Sagar	(10)
				308.	Damoh	(11)
				309.	Vidisha	(26)
				310.	Bhopal	(27)
				311.	Sehore	(28)
				312.	Raisen	(29)
44.		233	Malwa	313.	Neemuch	(15)
				314.	Mandsaur	(16)
				315.	Ratlam	(17)
				316.	Ujjain	(18)
				317.	Shajapur	(19)
				318.	Dewas	(20)
				319.	Dhar	(21)
				320.	Indore	(22)
				321.	Rajgarh	(25)
				322.	Jhabua	(47)
				323.	Alirajpur	(48)
45.		234	South	324.	Katni	(33)
				325.	Jabalpur	(34)
				326.	Narsimhapur	(35)
				327.	Dindori	(36)
				328.	Mandla	(37)
				329.	Chhindwara	(38)
				330.	Seoni	(39)
				331.	Balaghat	(40)
46.		235	South Western	332.	Khargone (West Nimar)	(23)
				333.	Barwani	(24)
				334.	Betul	(30)
				335.	Harda	(31)
				336.	Hoshangabad	(32)
				337.	Khandwa (East Nimar)	(49)
				338.	Burhanpur	(50)
47.		236	Northern	339.	Sheopur	(01)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
				340.	Morena	(02)
				341.	Bhind	(03)
				342.	Gwalior	(04)
				343.	Datia	(05)
				344.	Shivpuri	(06)
				345.	Guna	(41)
				346.	Ashoknagar	(42)
48.	Maharashtra (27)	271	Coastal	347.	Thane	(21)
				348.	Mumbai Suburban	(22)
				349.	Mumbai	(23)
				350.	Raigarh	(24)
				351.	Ratnagiri	(32)
				352.	Sindhudurg	(33)
49.		272	Inland Western	353.	Pune	(25)
				354.	Ahmadnagar	(26)
				355.	Solapur	(30)
				356.	Satara	(31)
				357.	Kolhapur	(34)
				358.	Sangli	(35)
50.		273	Inland Northern	359.	Nandurbar	(01)
				360.	Dhule	(02)
				361.	Jalgaon	(03)
				362.	Nashik	(20)
51.		274	Inland Central	363.	Nanded	(15)
				364.	Hingoli	(16)
				365.	Parbhani	(17)
				366.	Jalna	(18)
				367.	Aurangabad	(19)
				368.	Bid	(27)
				369.	Latur	(28)
				370.	Osmanabad	(29)
52.		275	Inland Eastern	371.	Buldana	(04)
				372.	Akola	(05)
				373.	Washim	(06)
				374.	Amravati	(07)
				375.	Wardha	(08)
				376.	Nagpur	(09)
				377.	Yavatmal	(14)
53.		276	Eastern	378.	Bhandara	(10)
				379.	Gondiya	(11)
				380.	Gadchiroli	(12)
				381.	Chandrapur	(13)
54.	Manipur (14)	141	Plains	382.	Bishnupur	(04)
				383.	Thoubal	(05)
				384.	Imphal West	(06)
				385.	Imphal East	(07)
55.		142	Hills	386.	Senapati	(01)
				387.	Tamenglong	(02)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
				388.	Churachandpur	(03)
				389.	Ukhrul	(08)
				390.	Chandel	(09)
56.	Meghalaya (17)	171	Meghalaya	391.	West Garo Hills	(01)
				392.	East Garo Hills	(02)
				393.	South Garo Hills	(03)
				394.	West Khasi Hills	(04)
				395.	Ribhoi	(05)
				396.	East Khasi Hills	(06)
				397.	Jaintia Hills	(07)
57.	Mizoram (15)	151	Mizoram	398.	Mamit	(01)
				399.	Kolasib	(02)
				400.	Aizwal	(03)
				401.	Champhai	(04)
				402.	Serchhip	(05)
				403.	Lunglei	(06)
				404.	Lawngtlai	(07)
				405.	Saiha	(08)
58.	Nagaland (13)	131	Nagaland	406.	Mon	(01)
				407.	Mokokchung	(02)
				408.	Zunheboto	(03)
				409.	Wokha	(04)
				410.	Dimapur	(05)
				411.	Phek	(06)
				412.	Tuensang	(07)
				413.	Longleng	(08)
				414.	Kiphire	(09)
				415.	Kohima	(10)
				416.	Peren	(11)
59.	Odisha (21)	211	Coastal	417.	Baleshwar	(08)
				418.	Bhadrak	(09)
				419.	Kendrapara	(10)
				420.	Jagatsinghapur	(11)
				421.	Cuttack	(12)
				422.	Jajapur	(13)
				423.	Nayagarh	(16)
				424.	Khordha	(17)
				425.	Puri	(18)
60.		212	Southern	426.	Ganjam	(19)
				427.	Gajapati	(20)
				428.	Kandhamal	(21)
				429.	Baudh	(22)
				430.	Subarnapur	(23)
				431.	Balangir	(24)
				432.	Nuapada	(25)
				433.	Kalahandi	(26)
				434.	Rayagada	(27)
				435.	Nabarangapur	(28)
				436.	Koraput	(29)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
				437.	Malkangiri	(30)
61.		213	Northern	438.	Bargarh	(01)
				439.	Jharsuguda	(02)
				440.	Sambalpur	(03)
				441.	Debagarh	(04)
				442.	Sundargarh	(05)
				443.	Kendujhar	(06)
				444.	Mayurbhanj	(07)
				445.	Dhenkanal	(14)
				446.	Anugul	(15)
62.	Puducherry (34)	341	Puducherry	447.	Yanam	(01)
				448.	Puducherry	(02)
				449.	Mahe	(03)
				450.	Karaikal	(04)
63.	Punjab (03)	031	Northern	451.	Gurdaspur	(01)
				452.	Kapurthala	(02)
				453.	Jalandhar	(03)
				454.	Hoshiarpur	(04)
				455.	Shahid Bhagat Singh Nagar	(05)
				456.	Amritsar	(15)
				457.	Tarn Taran	(16)
				458.	Rupnagar	(17)
				459.	Sahibzada Ajit Singh Nagar	(18)
				460.	Pathankot	(21)
64.		032	Southern	461.	Fatehgarh Sahib	(06)
				462.	Ludhiana	(07)
				463.	Moga	(08)
				464.	Firozpur	(09)
				465.	Muktsar	(10)
				466.	Faridkot	(11)
				467.	Bhatinda	(12)
				468.	Mansa	(13)
				469.	Patiala	(14)
				470.	Sangrur	(19)
				471.	Barnala	(20)
				472.	Fazilka	(22)
65.	Rajasthan (08)	081	Western	473.	Bikaner	(03)
				474.	Jodhpur	(15)
				475.	Jaisalmer	(16)
				476.	Barmer	(17)
				477.	Jalor	(18)
				478.	Sirohi	(19)
				479.	Pali	(20)
66.		082	North- Eastern	480.	Alwar	(06)
				481.	Bharatpur	(07)
				482.	Dhaulpur	(08)
				483.	Karauli	(09)
				484.	Sawai Madhopur	(10)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
				485.	Dausa	(11)
				486.	Jaipur	(12)
				487.	Ajmer	(21)
				488.	Tonk	(22)
				489.	Bhilwara	(24)
67.		083	Southern	490.	Rajsamand	(25)
				491.	Dungarpur	(26)
				492.	Banswara	(27)
				493.	Udaipur	(32)
68.		084	South- Eastern	494.	Bundi	(23)
				495.	Chittaurgarh	(28)
				496.	Kota	(29)
				497.	Baran	(30)
				498.	Jhalawar	(31)
				499.	Pratapgarh	(33)
69.		085	Northern	500.	Sri Ganganagar	(01)
				501.	Hanumangarh	(02)
				502.	Churu	(04)
				503.	Jhunjhunun	(05)
				504.	Sikar	(13)
				505.	Nagaur	(14)
70.	Sikkim (11)	111	Sikkim	506.	North District	(01)
				507.	West District	(02)
				508.	South District	(03)
				509.	East District	(04)
71.	Tamil Nadu (33)	331	Coastal Northern	510.	Thiruvallur	(01)
				511.	Chennai	(02)
				512.	Kancheepuram	(03)
				513.	Vellore	(04)
				514.	Tiruvannamalai	(05)
				515.	Viluppuram	(06)
				516.	Cuddalore	(16)
72.		332	Coastal	517.	Karur	(12)
				518.	Tiruchirappalli	(13)
				519.	Perambalur	(14)
				520.	Ariyalur	(15)
				521.	Nagapattinam	(17)
				522.	Thiruvarur	(18)
				523.	Thanjavur	(19)
				524.	Pudukkottai	(20)
73.		333	Southern	525.	Dindigul	(11)
				526.	Sivaganga	(21)
				527.	Madurai	(22)
				528.	Theni	(23)
				529.	Virudhunagar	(24)
				530.	Ramanathapuram	(25)
				531.	Thoothukkudi	(26)
				532.	Tirunelveli	(27)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
				533.	Kanniyakumari	(28)
74.		334	Inland	534.	Salem	(07)
				535.	Namakkal	(08)
				536.	Erode	(09)
				537.	The Nilgiris	(10)
				538.	Dharmapuri	(29)
				539.	Krishnagiri	(30)
				540.	Coimbatore	(31)
				541.	Tiruppur	(32)
75.	Telangana (36)	361	Inland North Western	542.	Adilabad	(01)
				543.	Komaram Bheem	(02)
				544.	Mancherial	(03)
				545.	Nirmal	(04)
				546.	Nizamabad	(05)
				547.	Kamareddy	(15)
				548.	Sangareddy	(16)
				549.	Medak	(17)
				550.	Siddipet	(18)
				551.	Medchal-Malkajgiri	(21)
				552.	Hyderabad	(22)
				553.	Rangareddy	(23)
				554.	Vikarabad	(24)
				555.	Mahbubnagar	(25)
				556.	Jogulamba	(26)
				557.	Wanaparthy	(27)
				558.	Nagarkurnool	(28)
76.		362	Inland North Eastern	559.	Jagtial	(06)
				560.	Peddapalli	(07)
				561.	Jayashankar	(08)
				562.	Bhadradi	(09)
				563.	Mahabubabad	(10)
				564.	Warangal Rural	(11)
				565.	Warangal Urban	(12)
				566.	Karimnagar	(13)
				567.	Rajanna	(14)
				568.	Jangaon	(19)
				569.	Yadadri	(20)
				570.	Nalgonda	(29)
				571.	Suryapet	(30)
				572.	Khammam	(31)
77.	Tripura (16)	161	Tripura	573.	West Tripura	(01)
				574.	South Tripura	(02)
				575.	Dhalai	(03)
				576.	North Tripura	(04)
78.	Uttarakhand (05)	051	Uttarakhand	577.	Uttarkashi	(01)
				578.	Chamoli	(02)
				579.	Rudraprayag	(03)
				580.	Tehri Garhwal	(04)
				581.	Dehradun	(05)
				582.	Garhwal	(06)
				583.	Pithoragarh	(07)
				584.	Bageshwar	(08)
				585.	Almora	(09)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
				586.	Champawat	(10)
				587.	Nainital	(11)
				588.	Udham Singh Nagar	(12)
				589.	Hardwar	(13)
79.	Uttar Pradesh (09)	091	Northern Upper Ganga Plains	590.	Saharanpur	(01)
				591.	Muzaffarnagar	(02)
				592.	Bijnor	(03)
				593.	Moradabad	(04)
				594.	Rampur	(05)
80.		092	Central	595.	Jyotiba Phule Nagar	(06)
				596.	Meerut	(07)
				597.	Baghpat	(08)
				598.	Ghaziabad	(09)
				599.	Gautam Buddha Nagar	(10)
				600.	Sitapur	(23)
				601.	Hardoi	(24)
				602.	Unnao	(25)
				603.	Lucknow	(26)
				604.	Rae Bareli	(27)
				605.	Kanpur Dehat	(32)
				606.	Kanpur Nagar	(33)
				607.	Fatehpur	(41)
				608.	Bara Banki	(45)
81.		093	Eastern	609.	Pratapgarh	(42)
				610.	Kaushambi	(43)
				611.	Allahabad	(44)
				612.	Faizabad	(46)
				613.	Ambedkar Nagar	(47)
				614.	Sultanpur	(48)
				615.	Bahraich	(49)
				616.	Shrawasti	(50)
				617.	Balrampur	(51)
				618.	Gonda	(52)
				619.	Siddharthnagar	(53)
				620.	Basti	(54)
				621.	Sant Kabir Nagar	(55)
				622.	Maharajganj	(56)
				623.	Gorakhpur	(57)
				624.	Kushinagar	(58)
				625.	Deoria	(59)
				626.	Azamgarh	(60)
				627.	Mau	(61)
				628.	Ballia	(62)
				629.	Jaunpur	(63)
				630.	Ghazipur	(64)
				631.	Chandauli	(65)
				632.	Varanasi	(66)
				633.	Sant Ravidas Nagar(Bhadohi)	(67)
				634.	Mirzapur	(68)
				635.	Sonbhadra	(69)

sl. no	state/u.t. (code)	NSS region		detailed composition of region		
		code	description	sl. no.	name of district	code
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
82.		094	Southern	636.	Jalaun	(34)
				637.	Jhansi	(35)
				638.	Lalitpur	(36)
				639.	Hamirpur	(37)
				640.	Mahoba	(38)
				641.	Banda	(39)
				642.	Chitrakoot	(40)
83.		095	Southern Upper Ganga Plains	643.	Bulandshahr	(11)
				644.	Aligarh	(12)
				645.	Mahamaya Nagar	(13)
				646.	Mathura	(14)
				647.	Agra	(15)
				648.	Firozabad	(16)
				649.	Mainpuri	(17)
				650.	Budaun	(18)
				651.	Bareilly	(19)
				652.	Pilibhit	(20)
				653.	Shahjahanpur	(21)
				654.	Kheri	(22)
				655.	Farrukhabad	(28)
				656.	Kannauj	(29)
657.	Etawah	(30)				
658.	Auraiya	(31)				
659.	Etah	(70)				
660.	Kanshiram Nagar	(71)				
84.	West Bengal (19)	191	Himalayan	661.	Darjiling	(01)
				662.	Jalpaiguri	(02)
				663.	Koch Bihar	(03)
				664.	Alipurduar	(20)
				665.	Kalimpong	(21)
85.		192	Eastern Plains	666.	Uttar Dinajpur	(04)
				667.	Dakshin Dinajpur	(05)
				668.	Maldah	(06)
				669.	Murshidabad	(07)
				670.	Birbhum	(08)
				671.	Nadia	(10)
86.		193	Southern Plains	672.	North Twenty Four Parganas	(11)
				673.	Kolkata	(16)
				674.	South Twenty Four Parganas	(17)
87.		194	Central Plains	675.	Purba Barddhaman	(09)
				676.	Hugli	(12)
				677.	Haora	(15)
				678.	Paschim Barddhaman	(23)
88.		195	Western Plains	679.	Bankura	(13)
				680.	Puruliya	(14)
				681.	Paschim Medinipur	(18)
				682.	Purba Medinipur	(19)
				683.	Jhargram	(22)

Contact :
Additional Director General
Survey Design & Research Division
National Statistical Office
Ministry of Statistics & Programme Implementation
Government of India
Mahalanobis Bhavan
164, G.L.T. Road,
Kolkata - 700 108
e-mail : tc.sdrd-mospi@gov.in

संपर्क :
अपर महानिदेशक
सर्वेक्षण अभिकल्प एवं अनुसंधान प्रभाग
राष्ट्रीय सांख्यिकीय कार्यालय
सांख्यिकी और कार्यक्रम कार्यान्वयन मंत्रालय
भारत सरकार
महलानोबिस भवन
164, गोपाल लाल ठाकुर रोड,
कोलकाता - 700 108
ई-मेल : tc.sdrd-mospi@gov.in